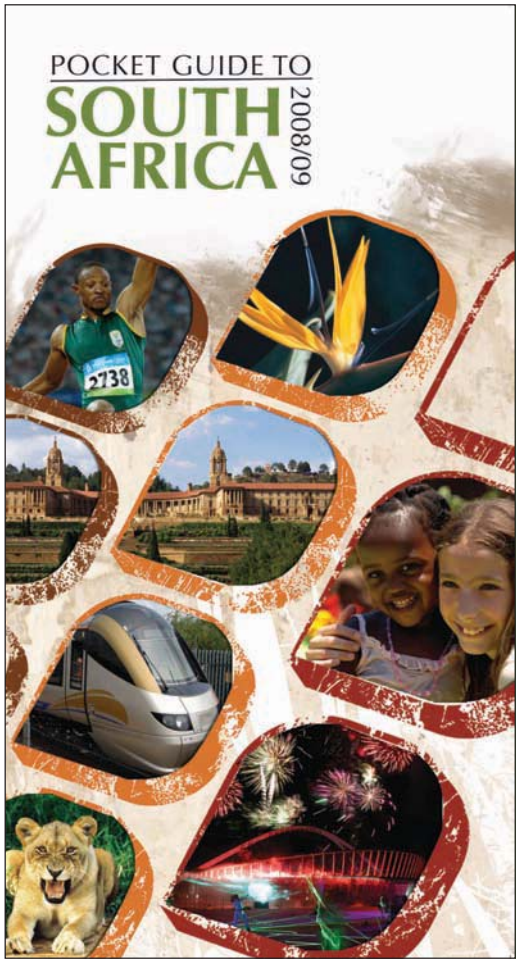

POCKET GUIDE TO
SOUTH AFRICA
2008/09

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2008/09
Sixth edition
Published by Government Communications (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001, South Africa
Tel: +27 12 314-2911
Fax: +27 12 323-0557
Website: www.gcis.gov.za
ISBN: 978-0-621-38413-0

Managing editor: Nina Bhaktawar
Editor: Delien Burger

Assistant editors: Refilwe Thobega and Antonia Vermeulen
Editorial support: Ongezwa Manyathi and Elias Tibane
Cover design: Neville Rabie
Design and layout: Chris-Mark Prins and Rachel Moloi
Picture researchers: Elizabeth Mpila and Ongezwa Manyathi
Photographs supplied by the: GCIS (Elmond Jiyane, Kendridge Mathabathe and Ntswe Makoena); Department of Science and Technology; Department of Housing; Department of Foreign Affairs; Rand Water; CSIR; Philip van Niekerk; Piet Smith, City of Cape Town; Denel; MediaClubSouthAfrica.com (Hannelie Coetzee, Roger Bosch, Graeme Williams, Chris Kirchoff, ORC, Jeffrey Barbee and Emily Visser), Gautrain and South African Airways.

Suggested reading list: Prof Reuben Musiker
Printed and bound in South Africa by Formeset Printers

The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring confirmation of any data in the Pocket Guide to South Africa, or more detailed and specific information, should consult the relevant department/institution. This information is also available at *www.gcis.gov.za.*

Unless otherwise specified, information contained in this Pocket Guide was the latest available as at October 2008.

FOREWORD

Contents

Foreword by President Kgalema Motlanthe	iii
South Africa at a glance	V
South Africa today	1
History	19
South Africa's people	27
Government	33
Provinces	47
Economy	63
Finances	79
Doing business in South Africa	89
Foreign affairs	99
Communications	111
Transport	123
Agriculture, forestry and land	135
Minerals and mining	147
Energy and water	157
Education	169
Science and technology	177
Housing	189
Safety, security and defence	197
Justice and correctional services	209
Social development	221
Environment	229
Arts and culture	243
Tourism	255
Health	275
Sport and recreation	285
Reading lists	301

I am proud to present to you the *Pocket Guide to South Africa 2008/09*. As the official resource on the work of government, this publication provides a comprehensive account of the programmes and policies of our government and highlights the areas of progress we have made, particularly during 2008.

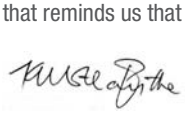
I believe that this publication plays an important role in capturing the evolution of our government and our country. It is updated every year to record as accurately as possible the countless efforts of all government departments that give life to our Programme of Action, shape the lives of millions of South Africans and influence our standing in the international community.

FOREWORD

In 2008, government undertook a *15 Year Review* to take stock of the progress it had made in improving the quality of life of all South Africans. The review, based on both external and government-based research, indicated that overall, government has made definite strides towards meeting its broad development objectives. Major progress was noted in key areas such as access to basic services like water, electricity, housing, social support and healthcare. At the same time, the review also indicated areas that require further intervention. Government acknowledges that much more can and must be done, and that new challenges have arisen that our country needs to respond to from 2009 onward.

The experiences of 2008, specifically the demands placed on us by challenges in both the local and international environment and our resilience in responding to them, attest to the fact that we have laid solid foundations for our democracy since 1994. We have also continued to show our consistency and commitment to making real the aspirations of our country and our continent to host a successful Soccer World Cup in 2010, ensuring that the various projects of government in this regard are on track.

In this edition of the *Pocket Guide to South Africa*, not only do we offer the scope of government's implementation but also a reflection on the progress we have made in creating a better life for our people. On the eve of our country's fourth general election — and halfway through the Second Decade of Freedom — the content of this edition of the *Pocket Guide to South Africa 2008/09* therefore takes on even greater significance. It is an account of the journey we have travelled over the past 14 years of democracy. In this sense, it is both a beacon of hope, a testimony of the change we have created together, as much as it is a barometer that reminds us that much more remains to be done.



President Kgalema Motlanthe
January 2009

SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Size
1 219 090 km^2

Key economic sectors
Mining services and transport, energy, manufacturing, tourism, agriculture

Population
48,7 million (mid-2008)

Official languages
English, isiZulu, isiXhosa, isiNdebele, Afrikaans, siSwati, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, Tshivenda and Xitsonga

Government
Constitutional multiparty, three-tier (local, provincial, national) democracy

Major cities
Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Bloemfontein, East London, Kimberley. There are nine provinces.

SOUTH AFRICA AT A GLANCE

Currency
100 cents equals one rand
Time
GMT +2 hours

Distances
Cape Town to Johannesburg 1 400 km
(880 miles)
Johannesburg to Durban 600 km
(380 miles)
Port Elizabeth to Bloemfontein 700 km
(440 miles)

Transportation
Excellent roads, rail and air facilities
(both domestic and international)

Telecommunications
World-class infrastructure. Internet access is widely available. There are four mobile (cellular) networks.

Value-added tax
Levied at 14%. Tourists may apply for tax refunds on purchases over R250 on departure.

Health
Top-quality care is available throughout the country, although basic in rural areas. Inoculations are only required for those travelling from yellow-fever areas. Malaria precautions are necessary in some areas.

For further information on South Africa, visit
www.southafrica.info and *www.gov.za*

Pocket Guide to South Africa 2008/09

SOUTH AFRICA TODAY

South Africa has experienced enormous change over the past 15 years. The achievement of democracy in 1994 led to transformed institutions, new policies and the start of a new society.

At the same time, government also had to deal with the legacy left by apartheid and the challenge of integrating South Africa into the world.

In line with the democratic Constitution, new policies were put in place to improve people's quality of life. This has constituted a systematic effort to dismantle apartheid social and economic relations and create a society based on equity, non-racialism and non-sexism.

The new Government's Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) outlined its key objectives as:

- meeting basic needs
- building the economy
- democratising the State and society
- developing human resources
- nation-building.

Even as the legacy of apartheid was being dismantled, changes in South African society brought new challenges. The *First Decade of Freedom Review,* conducted by government in 2003, assessed how far these objectives had been met through the work of its five clusters, and identified challenges of the Second Decade of Freedom. This review was supplemented in 2006 by a report on macrosocial trends. The report, entitled *A Nation in the Making*, concluded that South African society was making advances in terms of both hard (socio-economic) and soft (identity and social cohesion) issues, but that there were still many challenges to be overcome to fully realise the vision of a better life for all.

The election of 2004 mandated government to implement programmes to sustain and speed up the positive developments and address challenges. Government called on society to work together to halve poverty and unemployment by 2014. To achieve this, it set itself these broad priorities:

- growing the economy, as the main area of intervention
- new measures to help the poor enter the economy so they could move out of poverty
- improving state performance, the campaign against crime and South Africa's relations with other countries.

The millennium development goals provided further detailed targets and commitments consistent with the broad thrust of government's priorities for the Second Decade.

In 2007, Cabinet approved a set of key development indicators to provide evidence-based pointers to the evolution of our society and in 2008, these indicators were again released. Government also undertook a *15-Year Review* during 2008 to assess the progress made in creating a better life since 1994, with particular emphasis on the past five years. Collectively, these statistics and assessments trace the evolution of our democratic governance and our society and indicate both the areas of progress achieved as well as the challenges that need to be addressed.

Governance and Administration Cluster

The principal focus since 1994 has been on deepening the democratisation of governance and improving the capacity of the State to advance the objectives of reconstruction and development.

The first 10 years of democracy saw remarkable progress in unifying and integrating the Public Service. By 2004, the Public Service had also evolved in terms of representivity, with Africans at 72% of service at all levels. Since then, it has become still more representative. Women now occupy 34% of all senior positions.

Successive elections have increased the proportion of women in legislatures and the executive at 33% is one of the world's highest, as is participation of women in the executive across the three spheres.

Strong institutions of representative democracy have been built, including Parliament, provincial legislatures and municipal councils. Independent institutions support them, including the Human Rights Commission; Public Protector; Auditor-General; and Commission on Gender Equality. An independent judiciary has also been established.

Government has also sought to enrich participatory democracy through mechanisms such as the mandatory community consultation in formulating municipal integrated development plans; izimbizo (government interaction with communities); ward committees; Thusong Service Centres (previously multi-

purpose community centres); and community development workers (CDWs). Izimbizo have been held regularly since 2001 and includes the presidential izimbizo involving the president or deputy president; and national imbizo weeks held twice a year involving the executive of all spheres of government taking part in hundreds of community interactions.

Thusong Service Centres bring government information and services closer to areas with little or no access. By 2009, 130 centres were operational. By 2008, 3 305 CDWs had been trained and deployed to help communities access services and development opportunities. Ward committees had been established in 96% of wards.

Traditional leadership has also been afforded a role in democratic South Africa with several pieces of legislation having been passed since 1994 to recognise traditional leadership. There is a programme of support to traditional institutions and a national department is being established to deal with traditional affairs.

Government has created an environment for transparency and openness between the State and the citizens through, among other things, the Promotion of Access to Information Act, 2000, which allows citizens to access information primarily in possession of the State. It has also adopted the Batho Pele or "People First" approach, which has become the guiding principle for public services.

It has also steadily strengthened its ability to deal with corruption through the Special Investigating Units and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, Public Service Anti-Corruption Strategy (2002) and the Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004.

The permutation of national ministries and departments, with minor adjustments, was inherited from the pre-1994 administration. Various structures have emerged to promote integration and co-operation in governance. A government-wide monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system has been developed and a programme of capacity development for M&E units in departments has been initiated.

Financial management has improved at government level through the implementation of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 and the Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003.

Capacity-building in the Public Service has been a special focus since 2004. A massive boost in public-service training began when the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (successor to the South African Management Development Institute) was inaugurated in August 2008.

At local government level, Project Consolidate was launched in 2004 as a two-year hands-on intervention to boost skills development in 136 municipalities. By August 2008, 1 134 experts had been deployed to 268 municipalities (including 139 Project Consolidate municipalities).

Social Cluster

The Social Cluster focuses on alleviating poverty and reducing inequality. The social-grant system is the largest form of government support for the poor, servicing just over 12 million beneficiaries.

Since 1994, government has achieved significant progress in creating access for all South Africans to basic services such as electricity, water and sanitation. Government provides free basic services to poor households: 6 000 litres of water a month; and electricity worth 30 units per month. Households using electricity for lighting has increased to 80% while households using electricity for cooking has increased to 67% and 59% for heating. Households with taps in dwellings or on site increased to 70% in 2007 from 61% in 2001. The number of households with access to a flush toilet increased to 60% in 2007.

Between 1994 and 2006, households using the bucket system decreased from 609 675 to 113 085 in all areas.

In 2005, 5,59% of the country's gross national product was used for education. Expenditure on all education programmes has expanded rapidly, resulting in a higher participation rate. Further Education and Training college enrolments increased by 34% from 302 550 in 1998 to 406 143 in 2002, with a particularly fast growth in part-time enrolment.

To date, 95% of South Africans live within a 5-km radius of a health facility. From 1997 to 2006/07, access to primary

healthcare, measured by visits, increased from 67 021 961 to 101 644 080. South Africa now has the largest number of people enrolled on antiretroviral therapy in the world.

The percentage of children under one year who complete their primary course of immunisation has been increasing at an annualised rate of 5% per year. Coverage is now 88%, within reach of the 90% target.

Severe malnutrition among children under five years old has declined, from 88 971 cases in 2001 to 28 165 in 2007. Malaria cases declined from over 50 000 in the late 1990s to about 5 000 in 2007. Government has declared tuberculosis (TB) a top national health priority – treatment success rates remain relatively stable at around 70%.

HIV prevalence among pregnant women who access public-sector antenatal care services has stabilised – there was a decline from 16% in 2004 to 13,5% in 2006 among women younger than 20 years.

From 1994 to 2008, 3 132 769 housing subsidies were approved, and 2 358 667 units were completed. This brought housing to 9,9 million citizens who could access state-subsidised housing opportunities, of which 53% were women.

Through the land restitution programme, assets worth R12,5 billion were transferred to 1,4 million beneficiaries between 1994 and 2007. The total agricultural land distributed thus far constitutes 2,3 million hectares and still requires further intervention ahead.

Social cohesion has assumed greater focus in the social sector since 2004, particularly since changes in family size and structure, migration and other recent social trends have helped enhance the challenges of reducing the growing number of people in depressed situations. A key factor in what seems an erosion of social cohesion is the persistence of income inequality as the benefits of democracy have accrued unevenly to different sectors of society.

Economic Cluster

In the first few years of democracy, government focused extensively on creating stability in the economy and reintegrating with the international community. However, the *Ten-Year Review* in 2003 concluded that although great progress had been made, the "dynamic of economic inclusion and exclusion" posed a grave challenge and if allowed to persist "could precipitate a vicious cycle of decline in all spheres". Government's Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) for 2004 – 2009 therefore makes growing the economy and promoting social inclusion the central priority.

The MTSF's point of departure is that halving poverty and unemployment by 2014 requires growth averaging 5% a year till then. This means ratcheting growth to an average of 4,5% a year from 2004 to 2009 and 6% from 2010 to 2014. To overcome the constraints to faster growth, government launched AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa. It focuses on six key "binding constraints":

- volatility and level of the currency (with focus on volatility)
- cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- shortage of skilled labour, and the labour-cost effects of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits on competition and limited new investment opportunities
- regulatory environment and burden on small and medium businesses
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

Advancing towards government's objectives has required critical interventions and special programmes and projects to improve infrastructure; skills; the environment for small business and the Second Economy; competition and industrial policy; and state capacity. These have been the focus of the economic sector since 2004.

After several years of increasing unemployment, peaking at 31,5% in 2001, faster gross domestic product (GDP) turned the trend as net new jobs started to outstrip growth in the labour force from 2002. However, the proportion of people either employed or

seeking employment is 56,5%, lower than the 65% average in comparable countries.

Total public-sector debt has been managed down from 44% of GDP in 1994 to below 30% of GDP in 2008. The country now spends less in debt service costs, which has enabled government to increase spending on priorities such as health, education and the improvement of public services. Deficit reduction has been assisted by increased revenue receipts. Between 1996 and 2006, revenue collection quadrupled and the number of taxpayers more than doubled.

Monetary policy has been principally directed at influencing the quantity of money or the interest rate to achieve stable prices. From 1994, inflation averaged 6,3%. In 2000, government adopted inflation targeting as part of its policy to keep inflation within a band of 3% and 6%. From 2004 to 2007, inflation averaged 4,1% but has trended higher since 2006, when it reached the 6% level. For the most part, inflation since 2007 has been imported, driven above the target range by global fuel and food increases and amplified by a weakening exchange rate.

The rate of investment or gross fixed capital formation (GFCF) hovered around 15% – 16% of GDP for a long time due to low levels of government investment. A reversal of that trend came with the adoption of AsgiSA and an expansionary R482-billion infrastructure expenditure plan for the 2008 to 2011 period. In 2007, GFCF soared to 21% of GDP.

Levels of private-sector investment are much higher than in 1994 and 2004, and there is a positive pipeline of about R200 billion foreign and domestic investment.

South Africa embarked on a set of tariff and trade policy reforms in the mid-1990s. Multilateral liberalisation through the World Trade Organisation (WTO) was combined with efforts to modernise industry. Growth sectors like autos and tourism and cross-cutting sectors such as information and communications technology received special attention in the form of industrial development resources, including science and technology and human- resource development funds.

The Constitution provides for measures to overcome the consequences of apartheid discrimination against the majority. Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) is one of the measures promoted by government to surmount the disparities in wealth and income. The Broad-Based BEE Act was adopted in 2003 and the Codes of Good Practice gazetted in 2007.

Empowerment in the workplace and employment equity is growing steadily. Black representation in top management reached 22,2% in 2006 and 25,7% in all senior management positions.

Sector education and training authorities and other agencies like the National Skills Fund and programmes such as the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) contribute to addressing the skills shortage and the plight of youth and the unemployed. In 2008, the EPWP created one million work opportunities – a target originally set for 2009. The Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa), launched in 2006 to fast-track skills development has had many achievements, including the registration and the placement of over 15 000 unemployed graduates in companies in South Africa and abroad.

Some 1,3 million households have access to land for farming, often small plots. Outputs are generally low, but the Integrated Food Security Strategy and some provincial programmes to boost returns from commercialising subsistence agriculture have shown steady improvements. A range of initiatives to link smallholders to agroprocessing value chains have been initiated in forestry, sugar and biofuels.

The increases in food prices in 2008 impacted particularly on the poor. Global factors suggest that this trend is likely to continue. In this context, South Africa took the stance of ensuring that biofuel production does not undermine food production. Ultimately, broadening access to land as well ensuring responsive and effective agricultural extension services are crucial to realising the potential of agriculture to address rural poverty and enhance the country's food security.

Government has since 1994 given attention to sustainable development and its mainstreaming. South Africa's hosting of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD) in 2002 gave

impetus to the process. Government's 2006 *State of the Environment Report* provided a comprehensive analysis of the state of South Africa's natural resources and ecosystems.

Investment in research and development (R&D) had increased since 1994, reaching R14 billion or 0,92% of GDP during 2008. This puts the country on course to meet its R&D expenditure target of 1% of GDP.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster

Judicial transformation in democratic South Africa has had a number of aspects. South Africa's constitutional system changed from parliamentary sovereignty to supremacy of the Constitution, which redefined the independence of the judiciary. The role of the Judicial Services Commission in appointing judges constitutes a radical break with the past. By mid-2007, 52% of judges and magistrates were black (African, coloured or Indian) and 30% women.

From 1995, anti-crime efforts have been guided by the National Crime Prevention Strategy. Its elements include the National Crime Combating Strategy; the Integrated Justice System Programme; a Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit, focusing on crimes against women and children; until recently, the Directorate of Special Operations (DSO), and Asset Forfeiture Unit in the National Prosecuting Authority; a Financial Intelligence Centre focusing on organised crime; and a Victim-Empowerment Programme.

At the level of the courts, there has been some improvement in performance attributable to the Integrated Justice System. There are increased conviction rates in finalised cases, but the outstanding roll grew by 7% from 2002/03 to 2006/07.

From 1995 to 2007, the capacity of the prisons increased from 95 000 to 115 000, while the number of prisoners went from 111 000 (107% occupancy) to 161 000 (141% occupancy).

Partnerships between the police, community and business have resulted in initiatives such as the Community Policing Forum and Business Against Crime (BAC) to fight crime.

Community police forums were introduced on the premise that success in fighting crime depends on co-operation of the community with the South African Police Service (SAPS). Relations with organised business have progressed from the partnership with BAC – which, among other things, brought about major declines in street crime in targeted city centres – to the joint initiative with the Big Business Working Group to review and revamp the criminal justice system (CJS).

Also key to government is combating violent crimes against women and children. Sixty-three specialised courts dedicated to sexual offences have been established across the country. Thuthuzela Care Centres help prevent secondary trauma for victims of these crimes and also assist in improved conviction rates and speedy justice. Amendments to the Sexual Offences Act in 2007 and the Children's Act in 2008 have strengthened the legal weapons for fighting abuse. Specialised centralised units in the SAPS were established in 2007 to deal with family violence, child abuse and sexual assault.

Some of the crimes most prominently associated with organised crime decreased markedly from 2001 – such as bank robberies and truck hijacking. Cash-in-transit heists showed a marked decrease in 2007 from a peak in 2006.

The Organised Crime Unit dismantled 273 clandestine drug laboratories between 1994 and 2007, and neutralised 738 syndicates. Between 2002 and 2007, the DSO finalised about 1 300 investigations, initiated just over 1 000 prosecutions with an average conviction rate of 85%. The Asset Forfeiture Unit won forfeiture orders involving more than R115 million and frozen assets worth over R550 million.

Action to regulate ownership of legal firearms and reduce the number of illegal ones include a campaign to persuade people to voluntarily hand over firearms; destruction of redundant firearms in the SAPS' possession; an audit of firearms held by government departments; and operations to recover illegal firearms in high-crime areas. There were also joint operations with the Mozambican authorities to destroy weapons caches; and participation in the development of a United Nations (UN) Protocol against Illicit

Manufacturing and Trafficking in Firearms. Stricter criteria are applied in the granting of civilian firearm licences. More comprehensive and stringent firearm-control legislation was promulgated in 2000 and introduced between 2000 and 2004.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission, which was initiated by the democratic Government, helped to deal with the consequences of political violence and human-rights abuses under apartheid. Implementation of its decisions continues, among other things, in the form of payment of restitution; projects of reconstruction of most affected communities; and restoration of the dignity of communities and individuals with regard to place names, historical monuments and identification and reburial of those killed in instances of human-rights abuse.

Government has successfully dealt with manifestations of terrorism in South Africa, mainly in the form of urban and right-wing terrorism. It has played its part in combating international terrorism in a manner consistent with the tenets of the Constitution.

Control of the country's borders has become more co-ordinated with the establishment of the Border Control Operational Co-ordinating Committee, which includes the department of home affairs; intelligence; transport; public works; agriculture; health; and the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) and SAPS. Responsibilities of departments have been rationalised. Infrastructure at entry control points has been upgraded and technology modernised. Government has also entered into agreements with neighbouring and other countries.

Various courts and agencies already existed to deal with family and commercial matters – such as the divorce courts, maintenance courts and children's courts – and agencies that are fundamental to the working of the economy and the facilitation of trade and commercial activities, including the Land Registry. New courts have been introduced through legislation to promote development and equity, such as the equality courts, small claims courts and environmental courts. The Competitions Tribunal gives substance to the anti-competition policy.

In 2005, government initiated a comprehensive review of the CJS in conjunction with the Big Business Working Group. The proposals emerging from the two-year review were adopted by Cabinet in late 2007. These proposals include the need to prioritise building greater capacity of the JCPS departments; modernising technology (including the fast-tracking of existing initiatives); resources; and the ability to strategise, plan and work together in an integrated way rather than as separate components.

International Relations, Peace and Security (IRPS) Cluster

South Africa has emerged from isolation through normalised diplomatic relations and is an active participant in participation in regional and continental relations.

To help consolidate integration into the global arena, formal diplomatic representation has continued to grow. In 1994, there were only 65 South African foreign missions. By 2004, there were 105 South African missions in 91 countries; and by 2008, 121 missions in 105 countries. By 2007, government had accredited more than 160 countries and organisations resident in South Africa.

The many multilateral conferences and major international events hosted by South Africa also measure the country's integration into the community of nations. These include the Rugby World Cup (1995), the All Africa Games (1999), the WSSD (2002), the Cricket World Cup (2003), the inauguration of the Pan-African Parliament (PAP) (2006) and its successful bid to host the 2010 World Cup (awarded in 2004).

The regeneration of Africa is the main pillar of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. South Africa contributed to two tangible elements of African renaissance during the first decade. One was the transformation of the continental political architecture with the transition from the Organisation of African Unity to the African Union (AU); and another was the adoption of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) as the socio-development blueprint for Africa and the framework for its engagement with the North and other international actors.

The PAP, hosted by South Africa, has since its launch in 2005 been establishing itself as a voice of African citizens. The Economic, Social and Cultural Council was established in 2005 by an assembly of civil-society organisations convened by the AU Commission and has become a vehicle for unified positions from civil society on major issues. The African Commission for Human and People's Right's is in operation.

South Africa has helped operationalise AU peace and security structures, pre-eminently the AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC). Apart from having been a member and chair of the council, South Africa was one of the main troop-contributors to the deployment of the first peacekeeping missions under AUPSC auspices. The country actively participated in the establishment of the Continental Early Warning System and the African Standby Force.

In 2007, South Africa voluntarily signed up for comprehensive scrutiny under the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and was commended for 18 best practices, which other nations could emulate, including: co-operative governance, participatory governance practices, a consultative budget process and provision of basic needs. The report also raised critical issues for South Africa to consider, among them: inequality; poverty eradication; unemployment; crime; models of democracy; accountability of elected officials; race relations; and corruption. These issues are addressed in South Africa's comprehensive APRM Programme of Action.

South Africa has contributed to peaceful resolution of conflicts, drawing from the experience of its own negotiated settlement and has been one of the largest troop-contributors to African peace missions, in places such as the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi, Sudan and Ethiopia-Eritrea. It remains active in facilitating efforts towards peace and stability in Zimbabwe.

In recent years, South Africa's peace-making efforts have been supplemented by efforts to lay the basis for permanent stability and peace through economic reconstruction, nation-building and reconstitution of the State. Many government departments have contributed to this process in countries like the DRC, Sudan, Burundi and the Comoros.

On a regional level, the focus has shifted to developing policies to guide the Southern African Development Community's (SADC) integration agenda and to operationalising the many protocols adopted in the past decade. The Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan harmonises many SADC policies, sector strategies and protocols into priorities to be implemented within clear timeframes.

At a continental level, South African investment and trade with African countries has increased dramatically since 1994. Africa is now South Africa's fourth-largest export destination. South African investments in southern Africa alone totalled R14,8 billion in 2001. Trade with the rest of Africa totalled about R50 billion that year and increased to R108 billion in 2007.

In building relations between Africa and other continents, South Africa has emphasised strategic partnerships that are of benefit not only to South Africa but also to the continent and its partners. Established in 2000, the Forum on China-Africa Co-operation held its first heads of states-level summit in Beijing in 2006. The aim of the forum is to strengthen economic co-operation. The India-Africa Forum had its first high-level meeting in April 2008. It will address areas of co-operation on regional and international issues, including climate change and a developmental approach to WTO negotiations. Economic relations between Africa and India have grown significantly with investments from India totalling some R10 billion in 2006. South African investment in India's transport, mining and technology sectors has been growing.

Japan hosted four meetings of TICAD (Tokyo International Conference on Africa's Development) between 1993 and 2008. In 2004, South Africa and Japan agreed to extend their relations to allow Japan to support African regional integration and Nepad and help Africa to access Asian markets. South Korea has created a Korea-Africa Forum, with a more economic bias. At the same time, negotiations are underway to strengthen economic relations between the SADC and Mercosur in Latin America.

South Africa's agenda for South-South co-operation is informed by the broader objective to promote multilateralism in the interests of the developing world. The India-Brazil-South Africa Partnership emerged at the end of the First Decade of Freedom and has become a major influence in global politics and economic diplomacy.

The focus in the Non-Aligned Movement, which South Africa chaired for four years from 1998, has been on making it an effective machinery for the new South-South agenda. It has become effective in driving common positions at the United Nations (UN) where its several members of the Security Council have worked together on major global issues.

The G77 and China forum, established in 1994, has developed crucial common policy positions on a range of issues, mainly economic. When South Africa took the chair in 2006, it aimed with some success to harmonise positions that South countries take in other forums.

South Africa co-championed the New Africa-Asia Strategic Partnership from its establishment in 2005 as part of its commitment to the consolidation of South-South co-operation. It built on the strategic partnership between Africa and Asia at the dawn of independence initiated at the 1955 Bandung Conference.

The Government has consistently sought to transform North-South relations, particularly on security, the environment, debt relief, market access and terms of trade. South Africa has participated actively in the G8, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, the African Partnership Forum and United Kingdom Commission for Africa with a view to build partnerships based on new values.

Since 2005, the relations with the European Union (EU) has intensified on three fronts: work on a joint EU-Africa Strategy, consultations to develop a Strategic Partnership with South Africa and negotiations on the economic partnership agreements between the EU and individual African countries.

Coupled with the emphasis on economic diplomacy, South Africa also resolved to improve international marketing of South

Africa and Africa and created a number of bodies to achieve this, including the International Investment Council, the International Advisory Council on Information and Communications Technology as well as the International Marketing Council.

There has been a sustained increase in tourist arrivals in South Africa. Foreign arrivals into South Africa were recorded at 5,73 million in 1998 and grew to 9,10 million in 2007. Cumulatively, this growth is estimated to have created over 400 000 jobs.

The hosting of the 2010 World Cup brings a communication opportunity of a lifetime for South Africa to market the country and, working with the rest of Africa, to improve the continent's image.

The promotion of international peace, security and stability has been a major theme of South Africa's international participation. The country embarked on a two-year tenure as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council in 2007. South Africa consistently took a principled stance with regard to matters tabled in the Security Council, informed by commitment to multilateralism and the maintenance of international peace and security.

South Africa's hosting of the WSSD, and its ratification of multilateral environmental agreements enhanced its role as a player in global environmental governance. This has been sustained through its role as one of four developing country donors to the Global Environment Fund and as a donor to the UN Environmental Programme.

The way forward

The foundation laid in the first decade and new initiatives since 2004 have enabled accelerated growth and development in South Africa. There are, however, still some challenges. The findings of the *15-Year Review* in 2008 spell out the areas that require attention for South Africa going forward. These include:

- speeding up growth and transforming the economy
- fighting poverty and building social cohesion
- international co-operation
- building an effective developmental state.

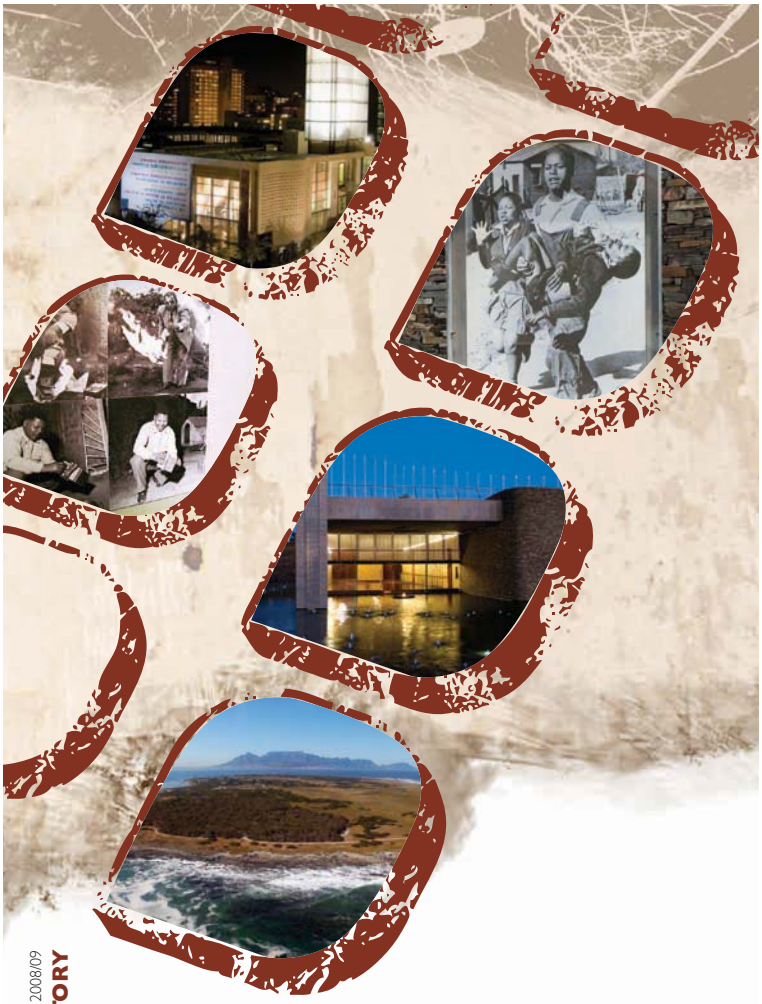
SOUTH AFRICA TODAY

Faster and shared growth is essential for reducing unemployment and poverty. Measures to overcome poverty are central to the comprehensive anti-poverty strategy that government is developing. Education has enormous potential to break the cycle of poverty. South Africa will also need to improve the country's productive capacity to ensure faster growth, absorb more labour, ensure competition, increase exports and ensure thriving conditions for small and micro-enterprises. There is also a need to develop second-economy programmes that have a mass impact.

There will be a need to take account of a shift in the cost of energy and to protect the environment.

Ensuring a harmonious society requires a reduction in inequality, through access to economic opportunities for all as well as sustaining pro-poor government spending. Social cohesion also requires improved service by the State, improved platforms for public participation and reduced crime and corruption.

Much work has been done to strengthen partnerships across the world, especially in Africa and the South. This needs to continue, still prioritising Africa and the countries of the South while maintaining relationships with industrialised countries. Strengthening strategic partnerships will help advance our national interests, and the deployment of our resources to advance African development.



Modern humans have lived in what is today South Africa for over 100 000 years, and their ancestors for some 3,3 million years.

One site, which is particularly rich in fossil remains, the area around the Sterkfontein caves near Johannesburg, is justifiably called the Cradle of Humankind.

More recent evidence of early humans is the many vivid rock paintings, which were created by small groups of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, the ancestors of the Khoekhoen and San.

Some 2 000 years ago, the Khoekhoen (the Hottentots of early European terminology) were pastoralists who had settled mostly along the coast, while the San (the Bushmen) were hunter-gatherers spread across the region. At this time, Bantu-speaking agro-pastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, spreading from the eastern lowlands to the Highveld.

At several archaeological sites there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures.

European contact

The first European settlement in southern Africa was established by the Dutch East India Company in Table Bay (Cape Town) in 1652. Created to supply passing ships, the colony grew quickly as Dutch farmers settled to grow produce. Shortly after the establishment of the colony, slaves were imported from East Africa, Madagascar and the East Indies.

Conflict

From the 1770s, colonists came into contact and inevitable conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms some 800 km east of Cape Town. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms.

At about this time, in the areas beyond the reach of the colonists, a spate of state-building was being launched. The old order was upset and the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state.

In the 1820s, the celebrated Zulu leader, Shaka, established sway over a vast area of south-east Africa.

As splinter groups from Shaka's Zulu nation conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the region experienced a fundamental disruption. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's

Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms were established, partly for reasons of defence.

This temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate the expansion northwards of the original Dutch settlers' descendants, the Boer Voortrekkers, from the 1830s.

Occupation

In 1806, Britain reoccupied the Cape. As the colony prospered, the political rights of the various races were guaranteed, with slavery being abolished in 1838.

Throughout the 1800s, the boundaries of European influence spread eastwards. From the port of Durban, Natal settlers pushed northwards, further and further into the land of the Zulu.

From the mid-1800s, the Voortrekkers coalesced in two land-locked white-ruled republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

The mineral revolution

The discovery of diamonds north of the Cape in the 1860s brought tens of thousands of people to the area around Kimberley.

In 1871, Britain annexed the diamond fields. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated.

The most dramatic example was the Zulu War of 1879, which saw the Zulu state brought under imperial control, but only after King Cetshwayo's soldiers inflicted a celebrated defeat on British forces at Isandlwana.

Gold

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants working on the new goldfields was the pretext Britain used to go to war with the Transvaal and Orange Free State in 1899.

The Boers initially inflicted some heavy defeats on the British but eventually the might of imperial Britain proved too strong for the guerilla bands and the war ended in 1902. Britain's scorched-

earth policy included farm burnings and the setting up of concentration camps for non-combatants in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died.

The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in racially segregated camps has only recently been acknowledged in historical accounts of the war.

Union and opposition

In 1910, the Union of South Africa was created out of the Cape, Natal, Transvaal and Free State. It was to be essentially a white union.

Black opposition was inevitable, and the African National Congress (ANC) was founded in 1912 to protest the exclusion of black people from power. In 1921, the Communist Party came into being at a time of heightened militancy.

In the face of a groundswell of opposition to a racially defined government, the seminal Natives Land Act was legislated in 1913. This defined the remnants of black people's ancestral lands for African occupation. The homelands, as they were subsequently called, eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land.

More discriminatory legislation – particularly relating to job reservation favouring white people, and the disenfranchisement of coloured voters in the Cape – was enacted. Meanwhile, Afrikaner nationalism, fuelled by job losses arising from a worldwide recession, was on the march.

The rise of apartheid

After the Second World War, in 1948, the pro-Afrikaner National Party (NP) came to power with the ideology of apartheid, an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the previous segregationist policies.

While white South Africa was cementing its power, black opposition politics were evolving. In 1943, a younger, more determined political grouping came to the fore with the launch of the ANC Youth League, a development which was to foster the leadership of figures such as Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu.

Repression

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic after winning a whites-only referendum.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sex and in provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

Residential segregation was enforced, with whole communities being uprooted and forced into coloured and black "group areas".

Separate development

At a time when much of Africa was on the verge of independence, the South African government was devising its policy of separate development, dividing the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence". The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people, and vast rural slums were created in the homelands. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced.

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its Programme of Action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s.

The programme embodied a rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations.

Defiance

The Defiance Campaign of the early 1950s carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism.

Soon the mass-based organisations, including the ANC and the Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), were banned. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960 when 69 PAC anti-pass demonstrators were killed. A state of emergency was imposed, and detention without trial was introduced.

Struggle days

Leaders of the black political organisations at this time either went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, waged from the independent countries to the north.

Top leaders still inside the country, including members of the ANC's newly formed military wing, Umkhonto we Sizwe (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. At the Rivonia Trial, eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge), were sentenced to life imprisonment.

While draconian measures kept the lid on activism for much of the 1960s, the resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils in Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Strong, legal vehicles for the democratic forces tested the state, whose response until then had been invariably heavy-handed repression.

Reform

Shaken by the scale of protest and opposition, the government embarked on a series of limited reforms in the early 1980s, an early example being the recognition of black trade unions.

In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of parliament, which enjoyed limited support.

In 1986, the pass laws were scrapped. At this time, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid

cause. However, these steps fell far short of the democratic aspirations of the majority of South Africans.

Mass resistance increasingly challenged the apartheid state, which resorted to intensified repression accompanied by eventual recognition that apartheid could not be sustained.

Apartheid's last days

In February 1990, newly elected President FW de Klerk announced the unbanning of the liberation movements and the release of political prisoners, notably Nelson Mandela.

Democracy at last

After a difficult negotiation process, South Africa held its first democratic election in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The ANC emerged with a 62% majority. South Africa, now welcomed back into the international community, was divided into nine new provinces in place of the four provinces and 10 homelands that existed previously. In terms of the interim Constitution, the NP and Inkatha Freedom Party participated in a government of national unity under President Mandela, South Africa's first democratically elected president.

The ANC-led Government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

The second democratic election, in 1999, saw the ANC increasing its majority to a point just short of two thirds of the total vote. South Africa was launched into the post-Mandela era under the presidency of Thabo Mbeki.

In the election on 14 April 2004, the ANC won the national vote with 69,68%. 27 April 2004 saw the swearing in of President Mbeki and the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom attended by heads of state and government delegations from across the world.

Working with its social partners, the Government has developed AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, systematically to raise the trajectory of growth to an average of at least 6% between 2010 and 2014. Such rates of

growth, combined with improved labour absorption, will ensure that South Africa is able to halve unemployment and poverty by the end of the Second Decade of Freedom.

In 2008, Kgalema Motlanthe became president following the recalling of President Mbeki.

The *Development Indicators* realised in 2007 and 2008 show that South Africa has made progress, particularly in improving access to basic services. Many challenges remain and new ones have arisen.

The *15 Year Review*, released in September 2008, examined the progress achieved by government since 1994. It will serve as an important point of departure that will take South Africa through the tail-end of the Second Decade of Freedom.

A significant milestone for the country is the hosting of the 2010 Soccer World Cup. Government is using this opportunity to fast-track the growth and development of the country. The event will leave a lasting legacy, not just for South Africa but for Africa too.

South Africa is often called "A World in One Country" because of the contrast in its technologically advanced cities, its unspoilt, wide natural beauty and the many cultures that make up the South African nation.

SOUTH AFRICA'S PEOPLE

People

According to the *Community Survey 2007*, there are 48 502 063 people in South Africa. Of these, 79% classified themselves as African; 9,6% as white; 8,9% as coloured; and 2,5% as Indian/Asian.

Africans are in the majority (about 38 million) and constituted 79% of the total South African population at the time of the survey. The white population was estimated at 9,6 million, the coloured population at 4,2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 2,6 million.

The South African population consists of the following groups:

- Nguni people (the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi)
- Sotho-Tswana people (including the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho [Tswana])
- Tsonga
- Venda
- Afrikaners
- English speakers
- coloureds
- Indians
- those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and maintain their own strong cultural identities
- a few members of the Khoi and the San.

Languages

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 states that everyone has the right to use the language and to participate in the cultural life of his/her choice, but no one may do so in a manner inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each person also has the right to instruction in the language of his/her choice, where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

To cater for South Africa's diverse peoples, the Constitution provides for 11 official languages, namely Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Recognising the historically diminished use and status of the indigenous languages, the Constitution expects government to implement positive measures to elevate the status and advance the use of these languages.

In 2003, Cabinet approved the National Language Policy Framework (NLPF) to promote the equitable use of the 11 official languages and to ensure redress for previously marginalised indigenous languages.

The Languages Bill provides for the promotion and development of all indigenous languages.

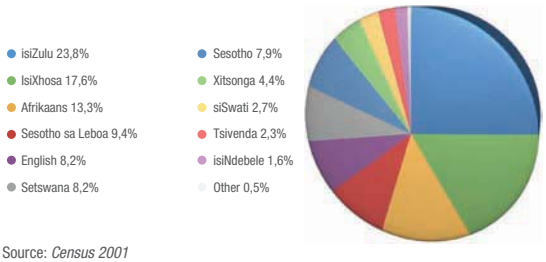
The National Language Service (NLS) provides a range of language services for official documentation, develops and promotes national language policy, and advises on standardising and disseminating information on a range of terminology. The NLS, which was allocated R50 million in 2007/08, is responsible for implementing the NLPF.

The National Strategy for Human Language Technologies (HLT) has been completed.

Projects to be implemented between 2008 and 2010 include:

- full implementation of the HLT strategy
- open-source HLT software for tasks such as speech recognition and speech synthesis in the South African official languages
- trained HLT developers, including fluent speakers of all of the South African official languages

Mother tongues



Source: *Census 2001*

- a machine-aided translation system optimised for the 11 official languages
- promulgation of the South African Language Practitioners Council Act
- establishment of the South African Language Practitioners Council
- establishment of language units within government departments.

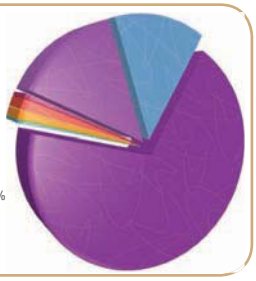
The Telephone Interpreting Service for South Africa provides telephone-interpreting services to people who need to access government information and aims especially to improve verbal communication between citizens and government agencies, thus allowing citizens to exercise their right to use the language of their choice when dealing with government.

The service was installed at over 300 sites in government departments as a pilot project, and the project has begun to set up Sign Language sites to enable the deaf community to access the project's services.

Religion

Almost 80% of South Africa's population is Christian. Other religious groups include Hindus, Muslims and Jews. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists or of no specific religious affiliation. The Constitution guarantees freedom of worship.

Religious affiliation



Source: *Census 2001*

Christian churches

Churches continue to play a critical role as agents of social change and transformation in pursuit of equality and the creation of a human-rights culture.

African independent churches (AICs)

The largest grouping of Christian churches is the AICs, and one of the most dramatic aspects of religious affiliation has been the rise of this movement.

There are 4 000 or more independent churches, with a combined membership of more than 10 million. Most are regarded as Zionist or Apostolic churches. The Zion Christian Church is the largest of these churches in South Africa and the largest church overall, with over four million members.

Afrikaans churches

The Dutch Reformed family of churches represents some 3,5 million people. The Nederduits Gereformeerde Kerk has about 1 200 congregations countrywide. The other churches are the Uniting Reformed Church of South Africa and the smaller Reformed Church in Africa. The Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk and the Gereformeerde Kerk are regarded as sister churches.

Roman Catholic Church

In recent years, the Roman Catholic Church has grown strongly in numbers and influence, even though South Africa is predominantly Protestant. It works closely with other churches on the socio-political front.

Other Christian churches

Established churches in South Africa include the Methodist Church, the Church of the Province of Southern Africa (Anglican Church), and various Lutheran, Presbyterian, Congregational and Baptist churches. Together, these churches form the nucleus of the South African Council of Churches.

The largest traditional Pentecostal churches are the Apostolic Faith Mission, the Assemblies of God and the Full Gospel Church, but there are numerous others.

A number of charismatic churches have been established in recent years. Also active in South Africa, among the smaller groups, are the Greek Orthodox and Seventh Day Adventist churches.

African Traditionalists

Because the traditional religion of the African people has a strong cultural base, the various groups have different rituals, but there are certain common features.

A supreme being is generally recognised, but ancestors are of great significance. As a result of close contact with Christianity, many people find themselves in a transitional phase somewhere between Traditional African Religion and Christianity.

Other religions

Two thirds of South Africa's Indians are Hindus.

The Muslim community in South Africa is small but growing strongly. The Cape Malays, who mostly descended from Indonesian slaves, make up most of this group, with the remaining 20% being of Indian descent.

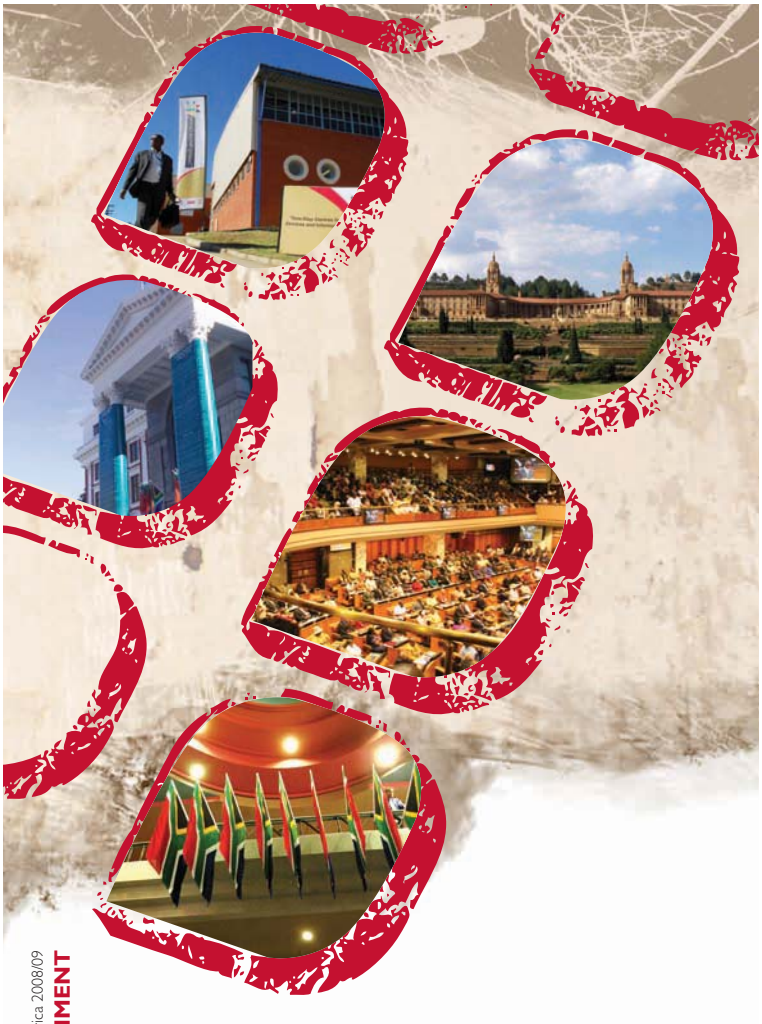
The Jewish population is less than 100 000. Of these, the majority are Orthodox Jews.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities is a constitutional body, which became active in January 2004.

The commission is funded through transfers from the Department of Provincial and Local Government. Its mission is to develop and promote peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities.

This will be achieved by facilitating the development of programmes to foster sensitivity, respect and understanding for cultural, religious and linguistic diversity and also by mediating in intercommunity conflict situations and facilitating harmonious co-existence.



South Africa's Constitution was the result of remarkably detailed and inclusive negotiations – difficult but determined – that were carried out with an acute awareness of the injustices of the country's non-democratic past.

GOVERNMENT

The Constitution is the supreme law of the country. No other law or government action may supersede its provisions.

The Preamble to the Constitution states that its aims are to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres. The powers of the legislature, executive and courts are separate.

Parliament

Parliament consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Several measures have been implemented to make Parliament more accessible and accountable. The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members, elected through a system of proportional representation for a five-year term. It elects the President and scrutinises the executive.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

The Presidency

The President is the head of state and leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The Presidency, February 2009
President Kgalema Motlanthe
Deputy President Baleka Mbete

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

Cabinet

Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them. No more than two ministers may be appointed from outside the National Assembly.

Provincial government

Each of the nine provinces has its own legislature of 30 to 80 members. They elect the Premier who heads the Executive Council.

Provinces may have legislative and executive powers concurrently with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, horse racing and gambling
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, except university and university of technology education
- environment and nature conservation
- health, housing and welfare
- language policy
- police services, public transport, traffic regulation and vehicle licensing
- regional planning and development and urban and rural development.

Provinces are also responsible for promoting trade, investment and tourism.

GOVERNMENT

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as on 1 February 2009		
Portfolio	**Minister**	**Deputy Minister**
Agriculture and Land Affairs	Lulama Xingwana	Dirk du Toit
Arts and Culture	Pallo Jordan	Ntombazana Botha
Communications	Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri	Radhakrishna Padayachie
Correctional Services	Ngconde Balfour	Loretta Jacobus
Defence	Charles Nqakula	Fezile Bhengu
Education	Naledi Pandor	André Gaum
Environmental Affairs and Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Joyce Mabudafhasi
Finance	Trevor Manuel	Nhlanhla Nene
Foreign Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Sue van der Merwe Fatima Hajaig
Health	Barbara Hogan	Molefi Sefularo
Home Affairs	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Malusi Gigaba
Housing	Lindiwe Sisulu	–
Intelligence Services	Siyabonga Cwele	–
Justice and Constitutional Development	Enver Surty	Johnny de Lange
Labour	Membathisi Mdladlana	–
Minerals and Energy	Buyelwa Sonjica	
Provincial and Local Government	Sicelo Shiceka	Nomatyala Hangana
The Presidency	Manto Tshabalala-Msimang	–
Public Enterprises	Brigitte Mabandla	Ntopile Kganyago
Public Service and Administration	Richard Baloyi	–
Public Works	Geoff Doidge	Ntopile Kganyago
Safety and Security	Nathi Mthethwa	Susan Shabangu

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as on 1 February 2009		
Portfolio	**Minister**	**Deputy Minister**
Science and Technology	Mosibudi Mangena	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Zola Skweyiya	Jean Swanson-Jacobs
Sport and Recreation	Makhenkesi Stofile	Gert Oosthuizen
Trade and Industry	Mandisi Mpahlwa	Rob Davies Elizabeth Thabethe
Transport	Jeff Radebe	–
Water Affairs and Forestry	Lindiwe Hendricks	–

Premiers, as on 1 February 2009	
Province	**Premier**
Eastern Cape	Mbulelo Sogoni
Free State	Beatrice Marshoff
Gauteng	Paul Mashatile
KwaZulu-Natal	S'bu Ndebele
Limpopo	Sello Moloto
Mpumalanga	Thabang Makwetla
Northern Cape	Dipuo Peters
North West	Edna Molewa
Western Cape	Lynne Brown

They have exclusive competency over:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation
- provincial roads and traffic.

Local government

Local governments are not merely instruments of service delivery, but are expected to act as key agents for economic development.

Municipalities

There are 283 municipalities focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services. The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities:

- metropolitan municipalities
- local municipalities
- district areas or municipalities.

South Africa has nine metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekwini (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Municipalities enjoy significant powers to corporatise their services. Legislation provides for them to report on their performance, and for residents to compare this performance with that of other municipalities.

Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) (2006 – 2011)

The implementation of the LGSA from 2006 onwards was a logical extension of Project Consolidate, initiated in 2004. The three core pillars of the LGSA are:

- mainstreaming hands-on support to local government to improve municipal governance, performance and accountability
- addressing the structure and governance arrangements of the State to better strengthen, support and monitor local government

- refining and strengthening the policy, regulatory and fiscal environment for local government and giving greater attention to the enforcement measures.

The mainstreaming of Project Consolidate into the LGSA saw a total of 1 134 experts deployed to 268 municipalities by August 2008 (Project Consolidate municipalities included).

Key partners, such as the Siyenza Manje initiative of the Development Bank of Southern Africa, played a valuable role. Deployed experts provide technical assistance in areas such as engineering, finance, town planning, project management and human-resource development. The involvement of national- and provincial-sector departments in supporting local government has improved. However, professional vacancy rates remain relatively high.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The largest infrastructure transfer programme is the MIG, currently administered by the Department of Provincial and Local Government. The MIG has shown strong real growth, averaging 6,4% between 2004/05 and 2006/07. Real growth is projected to accelerate to an average of 21,4% over the medium term.

The MIG was introduced in 2004/05 through consolidating various sector infrastructure grants, each administered by different departments, into a single programme. This was intended to make the system of transfers to municipalities simpler, more certain and more supportive of municipal infrastructure priorities. The programme is designed to supplement the capital budgets of municipalities, with a focus on providing basic infrastructure services to the poor, while stimulating job creation over the medium term. MIG funds are distributed to all municipalities, based on a formula that accounts for existing backlogs in service delivery as well as the functions assigned to individual municipalities.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution. A national department is being established to deal with traditional affairs.

Communicating with the people

The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is primarily responsible for facilitating communication between government and citizens. A high premium is placed on communication that emphasises direct dialogue, especially with people in disadvantaged areas.

The GCIS is responsible for maintaining government's website *(www.gov.za)*, which includes both an information portal for general information about government and a services portal that is a source of information about all the services offered by national government.

The GCIS leads or is involved in various communication partnerships and joint processes, including:

- An intersectoral programme to set up Thusong Service Centres (formerly multipurpose community centres), providing information about accessing government services, as well as some government services at the centres themselves. In January 2009, 130 Thusong Service Centres were in place and more centres were being established. A strategy for setting up one centre in each of the country's municipalities by 2014 has been approved.
- The process towards the transformation of the advertising and marketing industry.
- The Imbizo Campaign of direct interaction between government and the public.

The GCIS publishes, among other things, the *South African Yearbook*, the *Pocket Guide to South Africa* and *Vuk'uzenzele.*

The following entities report to the GCIS:

- the International Marketing Council (IMC)
- the Media Development and Diversity Agency.

International Marketing Council

The IMC of South Africa was established in 2000 as a public-private partnership aimed at creating a positive, united image for South Africa to give the country a strategic advantage in an increasingly competitive marketplace.

Government's Programme of Action is available on Government Online *(www.gov.za)*. The information is updated regularly to keep the public informed of the implementation progress.

The IMC's threefold mission is to:

- articulate a brand for South Africa, which positions the country to attract tourism, trade and investment, as well as realise international relations objectives
- establish an integrated approach within government and the private sector towards the international marketing of South Africa
- build national support for Brand South Africa.

The Public Service

Government believes that the Public Service exists to create a better life for all. Community development workers (CDWs) are part of government's drive to ensure that service delivery reaches poor and marginalised communities. CDWs act as a bridge between government and citizens, providing information on services, benefits and economic opportunities. They are in a position to inform government of the needs of the people.

By March 2008, more than 3 300 CDWs had been deployed in wards across the country. The CDW programme is one of the primary public-sector reform interventions to enhance development and the implementation of the Batho Pele principles, especially access to services.

The CDWs are pivotal in bringing government closer to the people, and in ensuring that community members become directly involved in the delivery of state services. CDWs have primarily helped citizens to gain access to social services and have increasingly provided support to citizens in taking up economic opportunities.

By the end of March 2008, the Public Service had 1 204 525 people in its employ (including members of the South African National Defence Force). Of these employees, 63% were attached to the social services sector (health, social development, education and home affairs), followed by 20% in the criminal justice sector.

The toll-free, 24-hour National Public Service Anti-Corruption Hotline facility (0800 701 701) was established for the reporting of fraud and corruption.

The Batho Pele ("People First") policy promotes integrated and seamless service delivery.

Various projects are being delivered through Batho Pele. These include:

- the Batho Pele Gateway Portal, maintained by government, to facilitate access to government services and information
- modernising government, for example, through the Centre for Public Service Innovation
- creating new service-delivery mechanisms such as Thusong Service Centres and one-stop centres
- the Government Information Technology Officers' Council to alert government when and how to intervene to improve service delivery
- active auditing of national and provincial departments' anti-corruption capabilities by the Public Service Commission.

Home affairs

The Department of Home Affairs has a network of offices in all provinces. Where the establishment of fixed offices is not warranted, mobile offices or units service such areas regularly.

Did you know?

- It now takes 37 days (down from 120 days) to process ID applications. The Department of Home Affairs also has a "track-and-trace" system for members of the public to check the status of their application. Simply send an SMS with the letters "ID" for your ID or "P" for your passport, followed by a space and then your ID number to 32551.
- All IDs will eventually be replaced with smart cards.
- The department's Customer Contact Centre has been expanded to 102 contact centre agents and 22 case-resolution officers and now deals with about 100 000 calls per month.

Existing fingerprint records of citizens are being converted on to the Automated Fingerprint Identification System (AFIS). Over 30 million fingerprint records are stored on the AFIS database and remote verification of citizens' fingerprints that are registered on the AFIS database is now possible. By August 2008, online fingerprint verification had been successfully implemented at 93 home affairs offices and training in revised procedures was provided to 236 staff members.

The Population Register is being reproduced, and an associated document-management system will be developed and rolled out gradually. This will consist of a large database, an online document-storage system, and a query interface for the retrieval and viewing of electronically stored documentation. The system will reduce processing time for each business transaction, while enhancing information integrity.

Permanent residence

The department is responsible for admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers who are in short supply locally.

Applications are particularly encouraged from industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or establish new concerns in South Africa.

Those wishing to enter the country as work seekers or for study purposes must have the relevant permit, which is issued outside the country.

Independent Electoral Commission (IEC)

The IEC is a permanent body created by the Constitution to promote and safeguard democracy in South Africa. Although publicly funded and accountable to Parliament, the commission is independent of government. Its immediate task is the impartial management of free and fair elections at all levels of government.

GOVERNMENT

In October 2008, government released the results of the *Fifteen Year Review*, which it initiated in 2007. It takes stock of progress since the attainment of democracy, in achieving the objective of improving the quality of life of all South Africans.

The review is based on almost a year of research and analysis within government and by outside experts and organisations. It is not only about taking stock of progress, but it is equally about identifying shortcomings and challenges.

The review takes a detailed look at the impact of government activities across the different clusters of government, including the special programmes and policies aimed at meeting the needs of women, children, persons with disabilities and young people. The picture it reveals combines progress with persisting and new challenges.

It takes into account major trends in the South African society and internationally, such as: changes in household size and structure, growth in the economically active population, migration, structural unemployment, social cohesion, inequality, state legitimacy, national leadership and social partnership and the global context.

Seats in the National Assembly, October 2008	
African National Congress	286
Democratic Alliance	47
Inkatha Freedom Party	23
United Democratic Party	6
Independent Democrats	4
African Christian Democratic Party	4
Freedom Front Plus	4
National Democratic Convention	4
United Christian Democratic Party	3

In September 2008, the chairperson of the IEC, Dr Brigalia Bam, unveiled the 2009 general election logo and theme. By September 2008, there were more than 20 million registered voters on the national voters' roll. Of these almost 55% were women.

The next general election was planned for 22 April 2009.

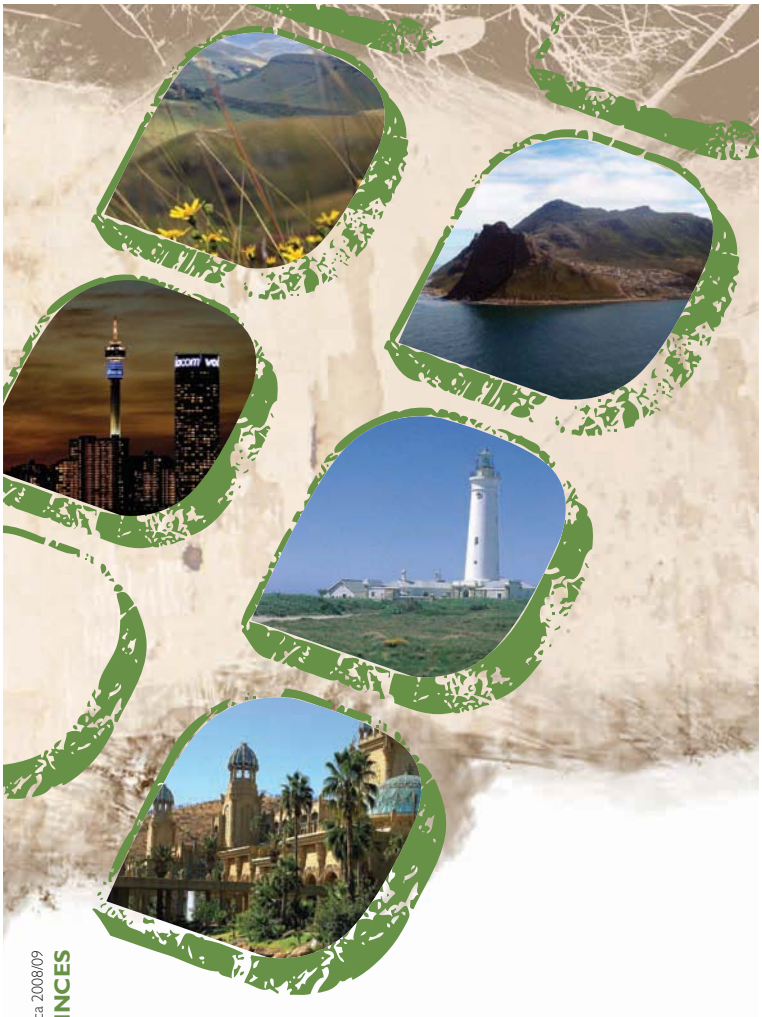
Seats in the National Assembly, October 2008	
Minority Front	2
African People's Convention	2
Pan African's Congress	1
Azanian People's Liberation Organisation	1
Federation of Democrats	1
National Alliance	1

Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy (Palama)

Palama (Sesotho for "ascend") was opened in August 2008. The academy, which has evolved from the South African Management Development Institute, aims to achieve a massive increase in training courses for managers in the Public Service by involving public- and private-sector educational and training institutions in an expanded training programme.

The academy facilitates and co-ordinates the programmes by monitoring and ensuring quality assurance of the training delivered by participating educational and training institutions.

The academy is part of the Batho Pele initiative, which aims to get public servants to be service-oriented, to strive for excellence in service delivery and to commit to continuous service-delivery improvement.



South Africa consists of nine provinces, namely Western Cape, Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

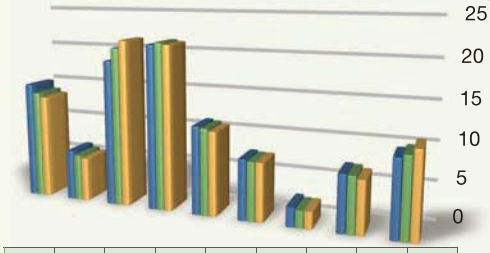
Each province has its own legislature, premier and executive council.

The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

Western Cape

This is a region of majestic mountains; well-watered valleys; wide, sandy beaches; and breathtaking scenery.

Cape Town, the legislative capital, is one of the world's most beautiful cities and is a must-see for tourists. Other important towns in the province include Worcester and Stellenbosch, known for their winelands; George, renowned for indigenous timber and vegetable produce and for its world-class golf courses; and Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the celebrated Cango caves.



	EASTERN CAPE	FREE STATE	GAUTENG	KWAZULU-NATAL	LIMPOPO	MPUMALANGA	NORTHERN CAPE	NORTH WEST	WESTERN CAPE
1996	15,1	6,5	18,8	21,1	11,3	7,7	2,5	7,2	9,7
2001	14,0	6,0	20,5	21,4	11,1	7,5	2,2	7,1	10,1
2007	13,5	5,7	21,5	21,2	10,8	7,5	2,2	6,7	10,9

Source: *Community Survey, 2007*

Percentage distribution of population by province – 1996, 2001 and 2007

Western Cape

Capital:	Cape Town
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	55,3%
isiXhosa	23,7%
English	19,3%
Population:	5 278 585
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km^2):	129 370
% of total area:	10,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa

The average growth in the Western Cape's gross domestic product (GDP) stands at 5,8%, having averaged over 5% since 2004. Between 2004 and 2008, the Western Cape welcomed 270 investment projects to the province, valued at R6,4 billion and creating 61 746 jobs.

Some tourist attractions include:

- Robben Island, where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for a number of years, in Table Bay off Cape Town
- Table Mountain, with its modern cableway, which takes visitors to the top, providing breathtaking views
- the National Botanical Gardens at Kirstenbosch
- whale-watching at Hermanus
- a wine-tasting tour of the spectacular winelands
- the Cape Floral Region, a world heritage site.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

The 70 000-seater Greenpoint Stadium in Cape Town will host eight 2010 World Cup matches, including a semi-final. Cape Town's preparations are well on track.

Developments include:

- dedicated bus and taxi lanes from the R300 into Cape Town along the N2
- expanding the Cape Town International Airport through a R2-billion investment

- constructing the rail connection between the upgraded Cape Town International Airport and the Cape Town Central Station
- upgrading the Cape Town Central Station
- doubling the capacity of the Cape Town Convention Centre
- building at least six new hotels in the Western Cape by 2010
- completing the Green Point Stadium by December 2009
- completing phase one of the Koeberg Interchange
- continuing to expand the N2 Corridor.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, a land of undulating hills, endless sandy beaches, majestic mountain ranges and deep green forests, is the second-largest of the nine provinces. The region ranges from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley, and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region.

Eastern Cape	
Capital:	Bhisho
Principal languages:	
isiXhosa	83,4%
Afrikaans	9,3%
English	3,6%
Population:	6 527 747
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	169 580
% of total area:	13,9%

Source: Statistics South Africa

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being motor manufacturing. The Coega Industrial Development Zone near Port Elizabeth is one of the biggest initiatives ever undertaken in South Africa.

The Provincial Industrial Strategy, launched in May 2008, outlines broad government efforts that are necessary to transform the structure and distribution of industrial activity in the

Eastern Cape to meet particular economic, social and political objectives. These objectives include job creation (and job retention), increased and sustained growth, income distribution, spatial distribution of economic activity, deracialising ownership of the economy and promoting social forms of ownership.

Some tourist attractions include:

- Grahamstown, the City of the Saints, a historical, educational and religious centre
- the endless golden beaches of Port Alfred and Kenton-on-Sea
- a walking tour of the Wild Coast
- the pachyderms of the Addo Elephant National Park
- various luxury game lodges
- the Red Location Struggle Museum in Port Elizabeth.

2010 World Cup

The new 50 000-seater Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium in Port Elizabeth will host seven matches.

The Eastern Cape is becoming more accessible as the Provincial 2010 Public Transport Plan, which links air, road, rail, maritime, taxi and bus operations is being implemented.

In 2008, substantial resources were being invested in the road network. This included R1,5 billion to be spent on building new roads, and rebuilding and maintaining existing roads.

The extension of the N2 from Kei Mouth to Port St Johns – the Wild Coast meander – will unlock the tourism potential of the scenic coastline. In addition, the 248-km road will facilitate agricultural and economic productivity and promote access to government services at schools, clinics and police stations.

Some R363 million has been allocated for Expanded Public Works Programme projects in road construction, providing job opportunities for 6 000 people.

The R78-million upgrade of the Bhisho Airport was completed in 2008.

Mthatha Airport is being upgraded at a cost of R60 million.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal	
Capital:	Pietermaritzburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	80,9%
English	13,6%
Afrikaans	1,5%
Population:	10 259 230 *(Community Survey, 2007)*
Area (km²):	92 100
% of total area:	7,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa

South Africa's garden province boasts a lush subtropical coastline, sweeping savanna in the east, and the magnificent Drakensberg mountains in the west. The warm Indian Ocean washing its beaches makes KwaZulu-Natal one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. Some of South Africa's best protected indigenous coastal forests are found along the subtropical coastline.

The bustling metropolis of Durban has the busiest port in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal ranks second as a major contributor to the economy, accounting for 16,7% of South Africa's GDP.

The KwaZulu-Natal Government has embarked on a strategy to attract investors to the province.

A project involving a developer from the United Arab Emirates comprises a multibillion rand investment on the northern side of uThukela River in the Macambini area. The project will be implemented in phases and will create thousands of permanent jobs. This will be the fifth project of its kind in the world based on the concept of a "city within a city". The project will be a fully integrated tourist destination located on about 7 500 ha.

Tourist attractions in the province include:

- the largest marine theme park in Africa, uShaka Marine World
- the 19th-century battlefields where imperial Britain clashed with the Zulu nation

- Durban's fascinating mix of eastern and western cultures
- dolphin-spotting on the coast between the Umdloti and Tugela rivers
- experiencing Zulu traditions and culture at authentic villages
- deep-sea fishing off Sodwana Bay
- the iSimangaliso and Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg world heritage sites.

2010 World Cup

On 25 November 2007, the 2010 World Cup Preliminary Draw took place in Durban. The province hosted representatives from 204 of the 208 soccer-playing nations of the world as well as a contingent of international media – the largest FIFA representation ever.

The Moses Mabhida stadium in Durban, with a capacity of 70 000, will host five first-round matches and one second-round match, as well as one of the semi-finals.

The stadium's grand centre arch, 106 m high, will become a world-first tourist attraction, thanks to a high-tech cable car designed to take visitors up to its highest point, where they can disembark and take in breathtaking views of the city and ocean. The 350 m-long free-span steel arch weighs 2 600 tons.

A new Kings Park railway station is being developed adjacent to the stadium.

The KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government is upgrading stadiums and building multipurpose sports facilities to allow some of its communities to host teams during the 2010 tournament. The selected municipalities for the projects include Umgungundlovu, Amajuba, Ugu and Uthungulu.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape lies to the south of the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. Away from the Orange, the landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of haphazard rock piles.

The province is renowned for its spectacular display of spring flowers, which, for a short period every year, attracts thousands of tourists.

Northern Cape

Capital:	Kimberley
Principal languages:	
Afrikaans	68%
Setswana	20,8%
isiXhosa	2,5%
Population:	1 058 060
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	361 830
% of total area:	29,7%

Source: Statistics South Africa

The Northern Cape is enjoying tremendous growth in value-added activities. Food production and processing for the local and export market is also growing significantly.

Underpinning the growth and development plan of the province are the investment projects that link up with the existing plans of the Namaqua Development Corridor, where the focus is on the beneficiation and export of sea products.

Mining, particularly the production of diamonds and iron ore, dominates the economy. The province is also rich in asbestos, manganese, fluorspar and marble. Strong growth areas include game farming and food production.

Tourist attractions include:

- the Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, which, together with the Gemsbok National Park in Botswana, forms Africa's first trans-frontier conservation area, the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- the Augrabies Falls, among the world's greatest cataracts
- the Sol Plaatje Museum in Kimberley
- the Southern African Large Telescope.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, houses the Supreme Court of Appeal, a leading university and some top schools.

Free State

Capital:	Bloemfontein
Principal languages:	
Sesotho	64,4%
Afrikaans	11,9%
isiXhosa	9,1%
Population:	2 773 059
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	129 480
% of total area:	10,6%

Source: Statistics South Africa

Since 1989, the Free State economy has changed from being dependent on the primary sector to being a manufacturing, export-orientated economy. The Free State gross domestic product per region (GDPR) amounted to about R75 827 million in 2004, representing a 5,5% contribution to the South African economy. Mining, particularly gold, is the biggest employer, followed by manufacturing. A gold reef of over 400 km stretches across Gauteng and the Free State. The province accounts for 30% of South Africa's total gold production, and contributes significant amounts of silver, bituminous coal and diamonds.

The Free State has cultivated land covering 3,2 million hectares. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the province's agricultural income, with most of the balance being contributed by animal products.

Some tourist attractions include:

- the sandstone formations at Golden Gate
- the spectacular scenery of the town of Clarens
- the King's Park Rose Garden in Bloemfontein
- the Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa National Park
- the desolate beauty – and watersports – of Sterkfontein Dam.

2010 World Cup

The 48 000-seater Free State Stadium in Bloemfontein will host five first-round matches and one second-round match.

The province has embarked on, among other projects, the following:

- developing the N8 Corridor road network
- rehabilitating and reviving the rail network from Thaba Nchu to Bloemfontein
- constructing an international convention centre, which will be linked to other 2010 initiatives such as the revamping of the Bloemfontein Airport, Mangaung African Cultural Festival and the internodal transport facility.

North West

North West borders Botswana, fringed by the Kalahari Desert in the west, and the Witwatersrand in the east. A province of varied attractions, North West is home to some of South Africa's most visited national parks, the celebrated Sun City and Lost City resorts, picturesque dams and dense bush.

North West is, thanks to platinum in particular, the dominant province in terms of mineral sales, which contribute 25,6% to the provincial economy. Diamonds are also mined here. Manufacturing activities include fabricated metals, food and non-metals.

North West is South Africa's leading producer of white maize. Some of the world's largest cattle herds are found in the area around Vryburg.

The GDP in constant 2000 prices grew from R58 billion in 1996 to more than R72 billion in 2006.

Since the launch of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy in 2004, the economic growth per year has consistently outperformed the annual population growth of the province, registering growth rates of 3,6%, 4,9% and 4,3%, in 2004, 2005 and 2006, respectively.

Some tourist attractions include:

- Mafikeng, site of the Anglo-Boer/South African War siege
- the mampoer (moonshine) country of Groot Marico
- entertainment, gaming and sports at Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City
- various popular golf courses
- the Elephant Sanctuary

North West

Capital:	Mafikeng
Principal languages:	
Setswana	65,4%
Afrikaans	7,5%
isiXhosa	5,8%
Population:	3 271 948
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	116 320
% of total area:	9,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa

- Hartbeespoortdam and surrounds
- a game drive or walk in Madikwe Game Reserve
- spotting the Big Five in the Pilanesberg National Park
- Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site.

2010 World Cup

Rustenburg is the official hosting city in the North West, with the 42 000-seater Royal Bafokeng Stadium as official match venue.

More than R400 million will be spent on road and traffic infrastructure in Rustenburg and Phokeng ahead of the 2010 World Cup.

Gauteng

Although geographically the smallest of the nine provinces, Gauteng (Sotho word for "place of gold") contributes more than a third of South Africa's GDP.

The main cities are Johannesburg, the biggest city in southern Africa, and Pretoria, the administrative capital of the country.

Manufacturing, financial and business services and logistics make Gauteng the economic powerhouse of southern Africa.

Success in attracting value-added new-economy investment is borne out by the burgeoning high-tech corridor in Midrand.

Gauteng has a greater proportion of its labour force in professional, technical, managerial and executive positions than any other province. Johannesburg houses the JSE Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

Hundreds of leading local companies have their head offices here, as do the regional operations of many multinationals.

Some tourist attractions include:

- Soweto, home to two million people and the site of much of the anti-apartheid struggle. Popular with tourists are Maponya Mall, various sought-after restaurants and graded accommodation.
- Pretoria in spring, when some 50 000 flowering jacaranda trees turn the city purple.
- Freedom Park, overlooking Pretoria.
- The Cradle of Humankind, the richest source of pre-hominid fossils on the planet, and a world heritage site.
- Maropeng, near the Cradle of Humankind.
- Bustling, funky downtown Johannesburg, City of Gold.

Gauteng

Capital:	Johannesburg
Principal languages:	
isiZulu	21,5%
Afrikaans	14,4%
Sesotho	13,1%
English	12,5%
Population:	10 451 713
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	17 010
% of total area:	1,4%

Source: Statistics South Africa

2010 World Cup

Soccer City in Johannesburg will host the final match of the 2010 World Cup. It will accommodate 94 700 soccer fans. Ellis Park, the venue of the 1995 Rugby World Cup final, will undergo a major renovation before the World Cup. It will have 61 000 seats.

Loftus Versfeld Stadium (50 000 seats) in Pretoria will also host 2010 World Cup games.

The province has won the right to host SoccerEx, the largest football business exhibition in the world. It provides an interna-

tional platform to showcase the province's readiness to host the 2010 World Cup.

The opening and closing ceremonies as well as a number of group matches will be hosted in the province.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga ("Place Where the Sun Rises") is bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west.

It is situated mainly on high-plateau grasslands, which roll eastwards for hundreds of kilometres. In the north-east, the province rises towards mountain peaks and then terminates in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying Lowveld, home to the Kruger National Park.

Mpumalanga

Capital:	Nelspruit
Principal languages:	
siSwati	30,8%
isiZulu	26,4%
isiNdebele	12,1%
Population:	3 643 435 *(Community Survey, 2007)*
Area (km^2):	79 490
% of total area:	6,5%

Source: Statistics South Africa

Mpumalanga combines mining and heavy industry with the cultivation of citrus, tropical and subtropical fruits and extensive forests. The southern hemisphere's three biggest power stations are located in the province, supplied by the Witbank coalfields, which are among the most extensive in the world. Middelburg is a major steel producer, and Secunda has a key oil-from-coal installation.

Some tourist attractions include:

- Kruger National Park and its ultra-luxurious, privately owned adjoining lodges

- the spectacular Mac Mac Falls outside Sabie
- the well-preserved historical gold-rush towns of Pilgrim's Rest and Barberton
- the stunning scenery of the Blyde River Canyon
- spectacular scenery at God's Window
- the historic train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

2010 World Cup

The Mbombela Stadium in Nelspruit, with a capacity of 46 000, will host four first-round matches.

Construction of the stadium started in February 2007 and is expected to be completed in May 2009. The budget totals some R875 million.

To advance the province's social-development agenda, R10 million was allocated to implement five community sport and recreation programmes in each district municipality in 2007/08.

Limpopo

In the extreme north of South Africa, Limpopo is a province of dramatic contrasts: bush, mountains, indigenous forests and plantations. Well situated for economic growth and trade with other parts of southern Africa, between 1995 and 2001 the province recorded the highest real economic growth rate in South Africa. The greater part of the Kruger National Park is located within Limpopo.

Limpopo is rich in minerals, including copper, asbestos, coal, iron ore, platinum, chrome, diamonds and gold. While exports are mostly primary products, the province is rich in resources, particularly in tourism, agriculture and minerals. Cattle ranching is frequently combined with hunting. Tropical and citrus fruits are extensively cultivated while tea, coffee and forestry are important economic contributors.

About 60% of South Africa's tomatoes, 33% of its oranges and 70% of its mangoes come from Limpopo. More than 45% of the R2-billion annual turnover of the Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market is from the province.

Limpopo

Capital:	Polokwane
Principal languages:	
Sesotho sa Leboa	52,1%
Xitsonga	22,4%
Tshivenda	15,9%
Population:	5 238 286
	(Community Survey, 2007)
Area (km²):	123 910
% of total area:	10,2%

Source: Statistics South Africa

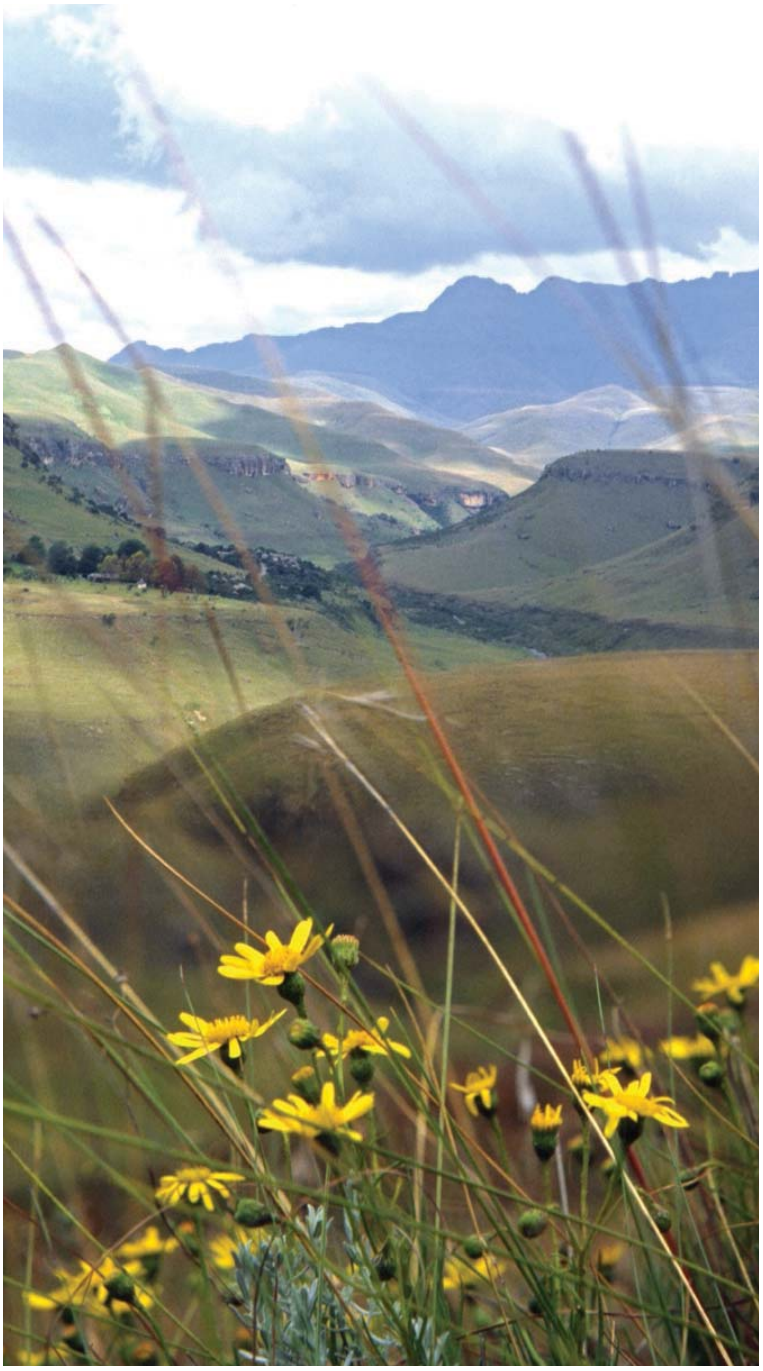
Some tourist attractions include:

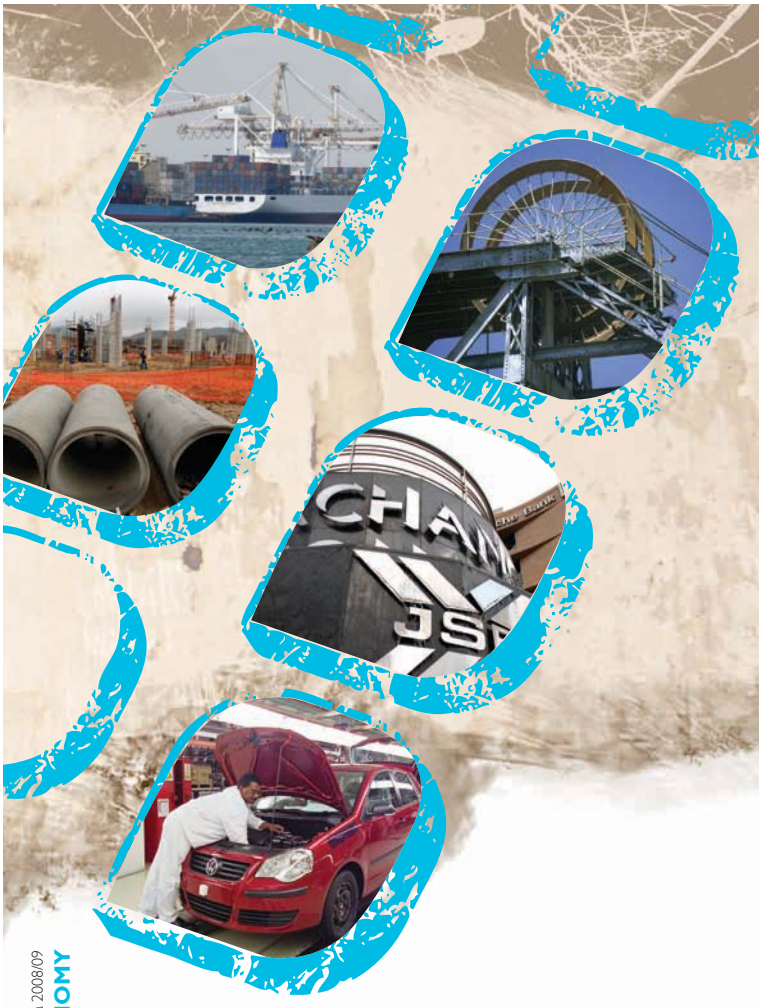
- the unforgettable bushveld scenery of the Waterberg
- fun and relaxation in the mineral baths of Bela-Bela
- the Big Tree near Tzaneen
- the springs of Tshipise, which attract a million visitors a year
- the Modjadji Nature Reserve
- the Mapungubwe iron age site.

2010 World Cup

Construction of the new 46 000-seater Peter Mokaba sports complex in Polokwane started in March 2007. Expenditure from the end of 2006 to March 2008 totalled R444 million.

The money was used, among other things, to improve the Giyani and Thohoyandou airports, as well as to upgrade the Polokwane Gateway International Airport.





South Africa's economy has been growing at almost 5% a year for the past several years – 32 consecutive quarters of positive growth. Following the global economic recession, this figure was expected to drop in 2008/09, but will accelerate moderately in 2010 and beyond.

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA)

Government's AsgiSA aims to ensure that economic growth is accelerated to at least 4,5% between 2005 and 2009 and about 6% between 2010 and 2014. This will assist in halving unemployment and poverty by 2014.

AsgiSA includes developing infrastructure to upgrade and build railway lines, harbours, ports and roads.

With South Africa's unemployment rate at 23% by March 2008, the infrastructure programme is geared towards creating and sustaining jobs.

The initiative entails an expansionary R482-billion infrastructure expenditure for the 2008 to 2011 period.

AsgiSA has also identified particular sectors of the economy for accelerated growth, such as:

- chemicals
- metals beneficiation, including the capital-goods sector
- creative industries (crafts, film, content and music)
- clothing and textiles
- durable consumer goods
- wood, pulp and paper.

Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa)

Jipsa is the skills empowerment arm of AsgiSA.

AsgiSA has identified six factors that constrain economic growth. One of these is the shortage of skilled labour.

Jipsa is a two-tiered structure comprising a joint task team and a technical working group. The joint task team is responsible for unblocking the acquisition of targeted skills, overseeing the work of Jipsa and ensuring that it delivers on its mandate of acquiring scarce and priority skills in the shortest possible time, building partnerships with different institutions and ensuring that Jipsa initiatives are sustainable.

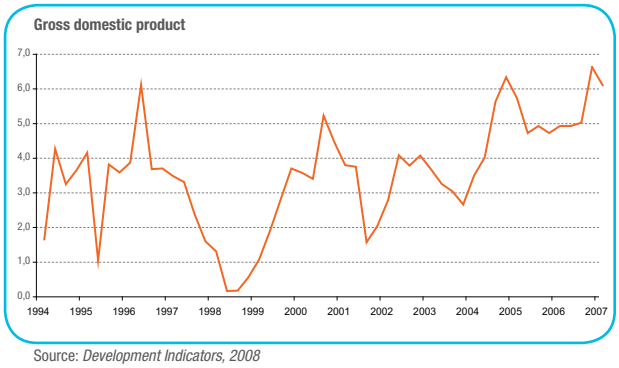
On the basis of AsgiSA's priorities, Jipsa's work areas are:

- high-level world-class engineering and planning skills for the network, transport, communications and energy industries

- city, urban and regional planning and engineering skills desperately needed by South African municipalities
- artisan and technical skills, with those needed for infrastructure development enjoying priority
- management and planning skills in education, health and in municipalities
- teacher training in Mathematics, Science, information and communications technology (ICT) and language competence
- specific skills needed by priority AsgiSA sectors, starting with tourism- and business-process outsourcing and cross-cutting skills needed by all sectors, especially financial and project managers
- skills relevant to the local economic development needs of municipalities, especially developmental economists.

Jipsa supports citizens who are trapped in the Second Economy, giving them a chance to participate in the First Economy and in growing the South African economy in general. Jipsa aims to boost empowerment through education.

In 2008, Department of Labour figures reflected an increase in the number of artisans in training. The 2007/08 service-level agreements (SLAs) signed between the various sector education and training authorities (Setas) and the Department of Labour reflected a total of 18 879 artisans to be registered.



Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

By mid-2008, provisional Seta SLAs indicated that an additional 20 000 learners were registered for 2008/09. The Department of Education forecasted that the number of engineers graduating from universities would increase from about 1 500 per year to 2 000 per year by 2010.

Domestic output

According to the South African Reserve Bank's (September 2008), South Africa's real gross domestic product rebounded in the second quarter of 2008 and expanded at an annualised rate of 4,9%, following growth at a rate of 2,1% in the first quarter.

This improvement in growth in the second quarter of 2008 reflected strong increases in the real value added by the primary and secondary sectors, which comfortably offset a further moderation in real output growth of the tertiary sector over the period.

Domestic expenditure

In contrast to the rebound in growth in real domestic production in the second quarter of 2008, aggregate real gross domestic expenditure contracted at a rate of 4,2% over the same period.

This reversal in growth was brought about by substantially slower growth in all components of domestic final demand. In addition, real inventories were depleted over the period.

Growth in final consumption expenditure by households continued on a downward trend from its quarter-to-quarter peak registered in the first quarter of 2007. Having increased at an annualised rate of 3,3% in the first quarter of 2008, growth in household spending slowed to 1,2% in the second quarter, led by a sharp decline in the demand for durable goods.

Price inflation

Year-on-year CPIX inflation (consumer price index less mortgage interest rate) rose from 6,3% in April 2007 to 8,9% in January 2008 and 10,1% in March 2008.

In March 2008, South Africa's rating of 63,2% ranked it 52nd globally on the Heritage Foundation 2008 Index of Economic Freedom.

According to Century 21 South Africa — the local chapter of the world's largest real estate brand — the index, which covers 162 countries, took 10 specific freedoms into account.

These were business, trade, fiscal, freedom from government, monetary, investment, property, rights, labour and freedom from corruption.

In a country-by-country analysis, South Africa was rated above average in seven of the 10 areas and its overall score was much higher than the regional average.

South Africa ranked third-highest on the continent, behind Botswana and Mauritius, which placed it in the "mostly free" category.

According to the index, the country's financial system was the most advanced in Africa. Government had been working to increase the transparency of commercial regulations.

The annual rate of increase in CPIX food prices stood at 13,6% in January 2008 compared to 8,3% in January 2007. During the course of 2007, food prices increased by more than 10%. The prices of basic foodstuffs such as maize, wheat, soya beans and rice increased as a result of changing climatic conditions and rising demand.

Year-on-year headline inflation or the CPI stood at 10,6% in March 2008. Statistics South Africa ascribed the higher rate partly to a rise in the year-on-year CPI for food, from 7,7% in March 2007 to 15,3% in March 2008.

Exchange rates

After declining notably during the first quarter of 2008, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand recovered some of its losses during the second quarter. On balance, the weighted average exchange rate of the Rand increased by 3,6% from the end of March 2008 to the end of June 2008.

The strengthening of the domestic currency mainly occurred during April and May and was probably supported by the further tightening of the country's monetary policy. In addition, the continuation of the international credit-market turmoil during the second quarter probably helped to attract investors' excess funds to South Africa's financial markets in search of higher yields.

During June 2008, the exchange value of the Rand declined in response to a lower-than-anticipated interest rate increase by the Monetary Policy Committee and the announcement of a larger-than-expected current-account deficit in the first quarter of 2008.

The depreciation of the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand in June 2008 was further aggravated by a ratings agency's decision to change the outlook for South Africa's long-term issuer default rating from positive to stable. Despite lower international prices of certain commodities, and partly supported by the rebound in domestic output during the second quarter 2008, the exchange rate of the Rand strengthened by 7,8% from June 2008 to August.

Following a decline of 15,4% during the first quarter of 2008, the real effective exchange rate of the Rand increased by 7,5% in the second quarter. On balance, the inflation-adjusted effective exchange rate of the Rand declined by 9% in the first half of 2008.

Foreign trade and payments

The deterioration in the current-account deficit was mainly attributed to continued strong import demand, which coincided with relatively weak growth of merchandise exports. The trade deficit consequently widened from R26,7 billion in the fourth quarter of 2007 to R61,4 billion or 2,8% of gross domestic product (GDP) in the first quarter of 2008.

Net service, income and current transfer payments to the rest of the world continued to grow in the first quarter of 2008.

Having increased by 4,8% in the fourth quarter of 2007, the volume of merchandise exports shrank by 7,2% in the first quarter of 2008. Despite the general slowdown in global economic activity, the international demand for South African mining products such as coal, platinum, base metals and gold remained strong.

The volume of manufactured exports advanced further in the first quarter of 2008, mainly due to the exportation of motor vehicles made possible by ongoing investment spending in the motor manufacturing industry.

Notable increases in the international prices of certain South African export commodities, alongside the depreciation of the Rand, raised rand prices of merchandise exports by 16% from the fourth quarter of 2007 to the first quarter of 2008. The turmoil in global financial markets and lower production volumes led to an increase of almost 20% in international commodity prices. The value of merchandise exports consequently advanced by 7,7% in the first quarter of 2008, following an increase of 6,8% in the final quarter of 2007.

Trade relations

Internationally, open economies with an export base perform much better in terms of economic growth than do closed economies. Increasingly, production is becoming globally integrated, and South Africa forms a vital part of international supply chains.

Therefore, dismantling barriers to trade, especially those faced by South African exporters, is a critical component of any economic strategy that promotes sustainable growth.

Africa's economic development

South Africa's global economic strategy focuses on Africa and a strong development agenda. Partnerships with countries on the continent are therefore considered vital and strategic. South Africa's economy is inextricably connected to that of the southern African region, and its success is linked to the economic recovery of the continent through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad).

At continental level, South African investment and trade with African countries has increased dramatically since 1994. Africa is now South Africa's fourth-largest export destination. Trade with the rest of Africa totalled about R50 billion in 2001 and increased to R108 billion in 2007, with exports amounting to R68 billion and imports to about R40 billion. In the same year, South Africa's trade

in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region totalled some R68 billion, with exports reaching R44 billion and imports R24 billion.

Besides forging bilateral trade and economic relations, the Department of Trade and Industry is committed to increasing South Africa's involvement in large capital projects on the continent. The following areas have been prioritised:

- infrastructure and logistics (roads, ports, etc.)
- energy and ICT
- water and waste management
- transport
- construction
- oil and gas infrastructure
- agribusiness
- mining
- human-resource development.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

The Department of Trade and Industry provides supportive services to Nepad, which has a critical role in accelerating trade and economic development on the continent to realise its primary objectives, namely alleviating poverty.

The Department of Trade and Development aims to contribute to the Nepad agenda by mobilising the necessary support from relevant stakeholders internally and externally, and providing leadership and strategic guidance on trade and economic issues. It also contributes to the national project co-ordinated through the African Renaissance Cluster on the formulation of a national response to Nepad through the Nepad Implementation Strategy of South Africa.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC comprises Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Since attaining democracy in 1994, South Africa has put regional integration by SADC member states on the top of its foreign economic agenda. This approach follows from the belief in the economic benefits that can be brought to all member states by closer economic co-operation in the region. To support this approach, South Africa has reviewed its trade relationship with other SADC members, adopted the SADC Trade Protocol, promoted investment by South African firms in the SADC and helped to facilitate greater volumes of trade by South Africa and other SADC members.

South Africa took over the chair of the SADC in August 2008. During the SADC Summit, the Free Trade Agreement (FTA) was launched. The theme of the SADC FTA is: *SADC FTA for Growth and Wealth Creation*.

The FTA provides preferential space towards regional business and its citizens by opening up opportunities for investment through reducing market risk and transaction costs, and creating a network of regional businesses interconnection.

The FTA is a vital stepping stone towards a SADC Common Market, where the movement of people would be unrestricted and free.

Freeing trade in the region will create a larger market, releasing the potential for trade, economic growth and employment creation.

Europe

Trade relations with Europe, particularly with the European Union (EU), are pivotal to South Africa's economic development. The Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement with the EU forms a substantial element of South Africa's reconstruction and development efforts.

By August 2008, the United Kingdom (UK), Germany, the Netherlands, Spain and Belgium were among South Africa's top 10 export destinations. Germany, the UK, Italy and France are among the top 10 countries from which South Africa's imports originate.

Since 2001, Germany has been South Africa's largest source of imports, showing annual growth of 18,5% between 2007

and 2008. In 2008, South Africa's biggest trade partner was the Netherlands.

United States of America (USA)

The USA is one of South Africa's leading trade partners. The country ranks second after Japan as a destination of South African exports and is third – after Germany and China – as a source of South African imports.

The trade balance with the USA changed from a deficit of R0,7 billion to a surplus of R1,1 billion in June 2008. Exports increased from R5,5 billion to R7,7 billion and imports increased from R6,2 billion to R6,6 billion.

South Africa is a beneficiary of the USA's Generalised System of Preferances (GSP), which grants duty-free treatment to over 4 650 products. At the same time, South Africa is one of 38 beneficiaries of the Africa Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA), which was promulgated in May 2000. In terms of the AGOA, 1 783 more products were added to the existing GSP products for duty-free treatment.

In terms of the AGOA, 1 783 more products were added to the existing GSP product list.

Although the AGOA was initially due to lapse in 2008, the USA Government met African countries' requests for it to run until 2015 under what is called the "AGOA III amendments".

The AGOA also allows duty-free entry of clothing and selected textiles into the USA, subject to certain criteria and policy reforms.

Canada

Another significant trading partner in the Americas is Canada. Since the lifting of sanctions in 1994, bilateral trade between South Africa and Canada increased from R904 million in 1993 to R6,6 billion in 2006. South Africa is a beneficiary of Canada's General Preferential Tariff (GPT). GPT rates range from duty-free to reductions in the Most Favoured Nation rates.

Latin America

South Africa's major trading partners in Latin America are Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Colombia and Peru. Most trade is with Brazil and Argentina, which are members of the Mercosur trade bloc.

A framework agreement, committing South Africa and Mercosur to an FTA, was signed in 2000. However, as a first step towards achieving this goal, the parties signed a preferential trade agreement (PTA) in December 2004. Upon ratification by all signatories, the PTA will offer businesses from both sides preferential access to a broad range of product lines.

South and south-east Asia and Australasia

Bilateral trade with south-east Asia, particularly the Association of South-east Asian Nations (Asean) members, increased rapidly from a low base in 1990. Asean presents South Africa with a potential market in excess of 520 million people.

Within the region, key partners for South Africa include Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, Vietnam and the Philippines.

Between 2007 and 2008, exports grew by 39,8% and imports by 9,1%.

South Africa co-operates with India in areas of common interest in the World Trade Organisation and other forums, and works closely in the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Forum. IBSA is not only an economic initiative, but also an undertaking by countries with shared interests in a multilateral system that equitably addresses political, social and economic matters. South Africa and India co-operate in the G20, a grouping of developing countries that seeks to address developmental challenges in the global economic system.

Australia has always featured as a well-known partner for South Africa in the region.

North-east Asia

In 2008, South Africa and the People's Republic of China (PRC) celebrated 10 years of diplomatic relations.

South Africa is China's key trade partner in Africa, accounting for 20,8% of the total volume of China-Africa trade in 2007. Total trade between South Africa and the PRC amounted to about R88 billion (about US$13 billion if the Rand/Dollar exchange rate for end of December 2007 is taken into account) for the year 2007.

Total trade between the PRC and South Africa increased from about R60,7 billion in 2006 to R88,3 billion in 2007. This represents an overall increase of about 45% if the total value of trade for the 2006 and 2007 years is compared.

Japan is South Africa's largest trading partner in Asia and is among South Africa's top overall trading partners. The South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum is designed to strengthen bilateral ties between the two countries. The forum meets regularly and explores new initiatives aimed at expanding relations.

Economic transformation

Government aims to boost small enterprises, equalise income and wealth and create long-term jobs. Fostering entrepreneurship among women is a particular focus.

Developing small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) has attracted increasing attention in South Africa in recent years, as an engine for general economic growth, and for employment creation and equity acceleration.

The Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda), which provides non-financial support to small and medium enterprises (SMEs), was formed by merging the Ntsika Enterprise Promotion Agency and the National Manufacturing Advisory Centre. It aims to:

- improve geographic outreach
- achieve the desired impact on small enterprises
- provide a single access point for small enterprises
- be inclusive of all relevant stakeholders
- leverage resources in service delivery
- optimise resource usage
- align government's service-delivery strategy coherently.

Seda also manages the Seda Technology Programme, with an

infrastructure of 26 centres in different industrial sectors countrywide to support SMMEs. Over the last three years, this has led to the creation of 154 SMMEs and extended support to 283 SMMEs.

By way of reaching out to enterprises not located in these incubation centres, the Technology Transfer Programme has over the past two years supported 56 technology-transfer interventions to the value of R29,8 million. All these transfers were to second-economy participants, of whom 39% were women-owned.

Within the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund's (Samaf) two-year existence from inception to March 2008, it approved R96 million (R55 million for on-lending and R41 million for capacity-building). In this period, 40 financial intermediaries across the country provided lending windows for Samaf funds, which created a loan book of R22,5 million.

With 5 500 borrowers, 65% being women, the number of borrower members reached 28 000. By May 2008, Samaf had 31 loan-application access points across the country.

Khula's budget allocations increased from R34,1 million in 2006/07 to R69 932 million in 2008/09. The Khula Credit Indemnity Scheme has also been successfully revised with commercial banks, to emphasise developmental imperatives associated with small business support.

Khula has also launched the first-ever South African Start-Up Fund, with an initial capital amount of R150 million, specifically for the benefit of new black entrepreneurs.

Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)

The IDC provides financing to entrepreneurs engaged in competitive industries. Its primary objectives are to contribute to balanced, sustainable economic growth in Africa and to the economic empowerment of the South African population, thereby promoting the economic prosperity of all citizens of the African continent.

The IDC's highlights for 2008 include:

- funding approvals amounting to R8,5 billion
- R2,1 billion allocated for developments in the rest of Africa
- funding activities that will assist in the creation and retention

of more than 33 200 direct new jobs in South Africa and 1 900 in the rest of Africa
- more than 40% of the direct new jobs created in South African rural areas
- R5,2 billion for Black Economic Empowerment enterprises (61% of the total)
- significant investment in SMEs (56% of the total number of projects funded)
- Foskor doubled its operational income to over R1 billion.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialist investment group, providing customised investment, mentorship and property-management services to SMEs in South Africa.

In March 2006, Business Partners Ltd launched two new specialist investment funds, the Business Partners Empowerment Fund and the Business Partners Tourism Fund. Business Partners Ltd will be investing R6,6 billion in entrepreneurial enterprises over the next five years.

State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

The Department of Public Enterprises is the shareholder representative for government with oversight responsibility for the following SOEs: Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom and the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor, South African Airways, South African Express Airways, South African Forestry Company and Transnet.

SOEs have a critical role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity. Infrastructure investments are a core part of the accelerated growth strategy, and SOEs are implementing comprehensive investment programmes to ensure that significant and sustained opportunities for investment are created in supplier industries.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is the largest job-creating initiative to be undertaken by government.

The EPWP is operational in all nine provinces. Projects include the construction of rural or low-volume roads, water and sanitation trenches and sidewalks.

In addition, government will increase spending on the maintenance of schools, clinics and other government buildings. EPWP projects have also been launched in the area of home-based care for people affected by HIV and AIDS, childcare projects, and in environmental projects like LandCare and clearing alien vegetation from river banks.

When the programme was launched in May 2004, it aimed to draw significant numbers of the unemployed into productive work, with an objective of creating a million job opportunities by 2009.

By the end of April 2008, the programme had already created 1 077 801 job opportunities, ahead of its scheduled 31 March 2009 time limit.

The National Treasury is responsible for managing South Africa's national government finances.

FINANCE

Supporting efficient and sustainable public financial management is fundamental to the promotion of economic development, good governance, social progress and a rising standard of living for all South Africans. South Africa's Constitution mandates National Treasury to ensure transparency, accountability and sound financial controls in the management of public finances.

In support of government's Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, National Treasury's work on fiscal policy and budget reform is focused on strengthening infrastructure investment and maintenance, broadening participation in the economy and improving the quality of social services. Improved budget planning, better documentation and greater transparency in public finances continue to be key priorities. National Treasury is expanding its capacity to provide technical support, particularly for infrastructure planning and project management.

Fiscal policy framework

The Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, presented the national Budget for 2009/10 in February 2009.

The economy and fiscal stance

Highlights included:

- gross domestic product (GDP) growth of 1,2% in 2009 before recovering to 4% by 2011
- consumer price inflation to fall to 5,8% in 2009
- over R780 billion of public infrastructure spending planned for the next five years
- real growth in consolidated government spending (excluding interest) of 5,1%.

Tax proposals

Highlights included:

- personal tax relief for individuals of R13,6 billion
- new motor vehicle excise taxes to tax carbon emissions and a new tax on energy-intensive light buls
- an increase in the plastic bag levy by 1 cent per bag.

Spending on public services

Highlights included:

- R24,8 billion to provinces for increasing services mainly in health and education
- R4,1 billion for the second phase of the Expanded Public Works Programme
- R4 billion more for the School Nutrition Programme to feed more children more often
- R2,1 billion more for provincial infrastructure
- R1,9 billion for municipal infrastructure and R1 billion for regional bulk water infrastructure
- R600 million for municipalities to extend free basic services
- R3,7 billion more for increased housing provision
- R932 million for the treatment and prevention of HIV and AIDS
- R5,4 billion for the criminal justice sector overhaul, including fingerprint and DNA databases
- R12 billion more for social grants and R1,2 billion for grant administration fees
- R6,4 billion for public transport, roads and rail infrastructure
- R700 million for investing in rural development.

In January 2009, South African retail chain Pick n Pay won the Washington DC-based National Retail Federation (NRF) International Retailer of the Year, a coveted international award given to firms that achieve a global reputation for excellence and service to the retail industry.

Pick n Pay, with 162 supermarkets, 127 family stores and 19 hypermarkets across South Africa, registered turnover of over R23 billion for the year ended August 2008, representing year-on-year growth of 16,4%. It was added to the JSE's Top 40 Index in December 2008.

Unlike many other retail awards, those awarded by the NRF involve a selection process by global industry leaders.

The NRF is the world's largest retail trade association, representing more than 100 organisations in the United States of America and abroad, covering retailers and suppliers from specialty, discount, catalogue, Internet, independent, chain, chemist and food stores.

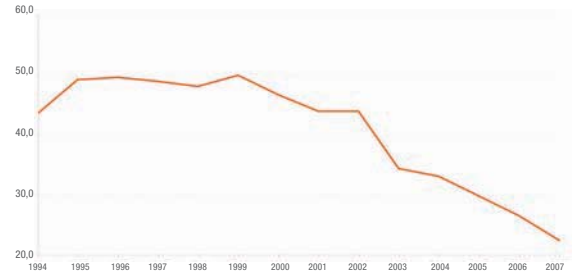
Debt management

A further priority for National Treasury is the prudent management of government's financial assets and liabilities, including the domestic and foreign-debt portfolio. The main debt-management objective of financing borrowing requirements at the lowest cost within acceptable levels of risk, has shifted towards actively pursuing government's macroeconomic objectives, particularly reducing sovereign external vulnerabilities.

Many years of prudent macroeconomic policy have contributed to a economy capable of both sustaining and accelerating the growth trajectory. The uniqueness of South Africa's economic landscape is reflected in the fact that government is increasing capital and socio-economic expenditure, even as it continues to enjoy a positive fiscal balance, and is reducing the amount of money it needs to borrow.

Government debt fell from 43,5% of GDP in 1994 to 22,3% in 2007. This led to low debt servicing costs for the Public Sector. Revenue collection increased, while spending was controlled. This provides protection against turbulence in international financial markets and frees resources for investment towards a more productive economy and expansion of social services.

Government debt as a percentage of gross domestic product



Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

Market performance

Bond turnover

The Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa) is an independent, licensed exchange, constituted as a public company, and responsible for operating and regulating the debt securities and interest-rate derivative markets in South Africa. Besa was granted its exchange licence in 1996 and over the past 10 years has been at the forefront of market developments in South Africa.

In December 2007, Besa entered a new era, successfully converting from a mutual association to a public company. As the direct regulator of the bond market, Besa operates within the framework of the Securities Services Act, 2004 and a set of rules and directives approved by the Financial Services Board (FSB).

The South African bond market is a leader among emerging market economies. Turnover reported on Besa in 2007 reached a record R13,8 trillion while offshore trades in bonds settled through local infrastructure totalled R9,6 trillion for 2007. This represented a turnover velocity of 30 times market cap. By December 2007, Besa had listed some 967 debt securities, issued by 104 sovereign and corporate borrowers, with a total market capitalisation of R862 billion.

Managing public finances

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives. To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 since 1 April 2000.

Since the implementation of the PFMA, 1999, there have been measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are now required to compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved

information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- departments submitting monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes, which are being implemented by institutions
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices, both locally and internationally
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the Auditor-General (AG) within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

Auditor-General

The Constitution guarantees the independence of the AG. The office audits national, provincial and local government.

The AG has the power to audit the activities of public entities without the approval of the chief executive officer or directors.

Taxation

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) collected a preliminary R571,8 billion during the fiscal year 2007/08.

The preliminary result was R0,8 billion above the revised budget estimate made in February 2008, and R15,2 billion above February 2007's estimate of R556,6 billion.

The preliminary estimate of national expenditure was R541,6 billion, bringing the main budget surplus to R18,5 billion or 0,9% of GDP, which was 0,1% higher than the February 2008 estimate.

Sources of revenue

Income tax

Income tax is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the Income Tax Act, 1962.

In South Africa, income tax is levied on South African residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of gross income less allowable deductions as per the Act.

The income threshold below which no tax is payable by individuals under 65 years was raised to R54 200 for the tax year beginning March 2009, and for taxpayers over the age of 65 to R84 200 a year.

The year 2007/08 saw the implementation of a new assessment process that simplified tax returns, did away with attaching supporting documents to returns, automated return processing and encouraged e-filing.

Over a million returns were electronically filed, 3,8 million returns processed automatically and 32% of returns processed within 48 hours.

Value-added tax (VAT)

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle.

Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise. Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14%, but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

South African Reserve Bank

The bank, which is independent, formulates and implements monetary policy and regulates the supply of money by influencing its cost.

An important responsibility of the bank is to ensure that the banking system as a whole is sound and meets the requirements of the community.

The bank acts as a banker to other banking institutions. It is also the custodian of the statutory cash reserves and provides facilities for the clearing and settlement of inter-bank obligations.

Monetary policy

Growth in the broad money supply (M3) maintained strong growth during 2007, registering an annual high 12-month growth rate of 25,8% in August 2007, before decelerating moderately to 21,0% in March 2008. Growth over 12 months in banks' total loans and advances similarly remained relatively strong during 2007, peaking at 27,7% in June 2007, before slowing down to 21,8% in February 2008. However, growth again accelerated to 23,6% in March 2008. Asset-backed credit (mortgage advances, leasing finance and instalment sale credit) constituted the bulk of the increase in banks' total loans and advances throughout 2007 and early 2008.

The moderation in the growth in banks' total loans and advances that was evident from the second-half of 2007 was consistent with the gradual tightening of monetary policy since June 2006, accompanied by tighter lending standards set by the National Credit Act, 2005 from June 2007.

The banking industry

The South African banking system remained stable and banks were sound during 2007. Banks maintained capital adequacy ratios above the minimum requirement of 10%. The capital adequacy ratio for the banking sector amounted to 12,78% at the end of December 2007 (December 2006: 12,29%).

By the end of December 2007, there were 33 banking institutions reporting data to the Office of the Registrar of Banks (excluding two mutual banks, however, including one institution doing banking business in terms of an exemption notice under the provisions of the Banks Act, 1990, namely Ithala Limited).

Forty-six foreign banks had authorised representative offices at the end of December 2007. The number of people employed in the banking sector totalled 139 149 at the end of December 2007.

Insurance companies

By March 2008, 82 long-term insurers and 106 short-term insurers were registered with the FSB. According to class of policies, life insurance business forms the bulk of premiums of primary insurers and accounts for almost 50% of net premiums.

Development Bank of Southern Africa

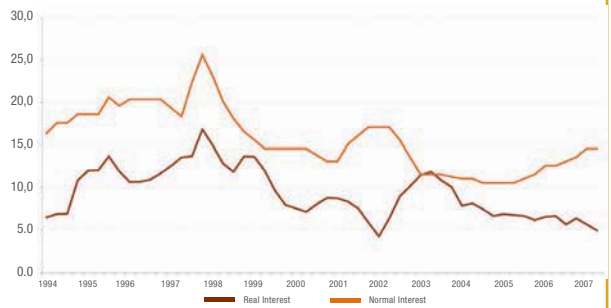
The primary purpose of the bank is to promote economic development and growth, human resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank's mandate is focused on infrastructure.

Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is an independent statutory body financed by levies imposed on regulated institutions and persons.

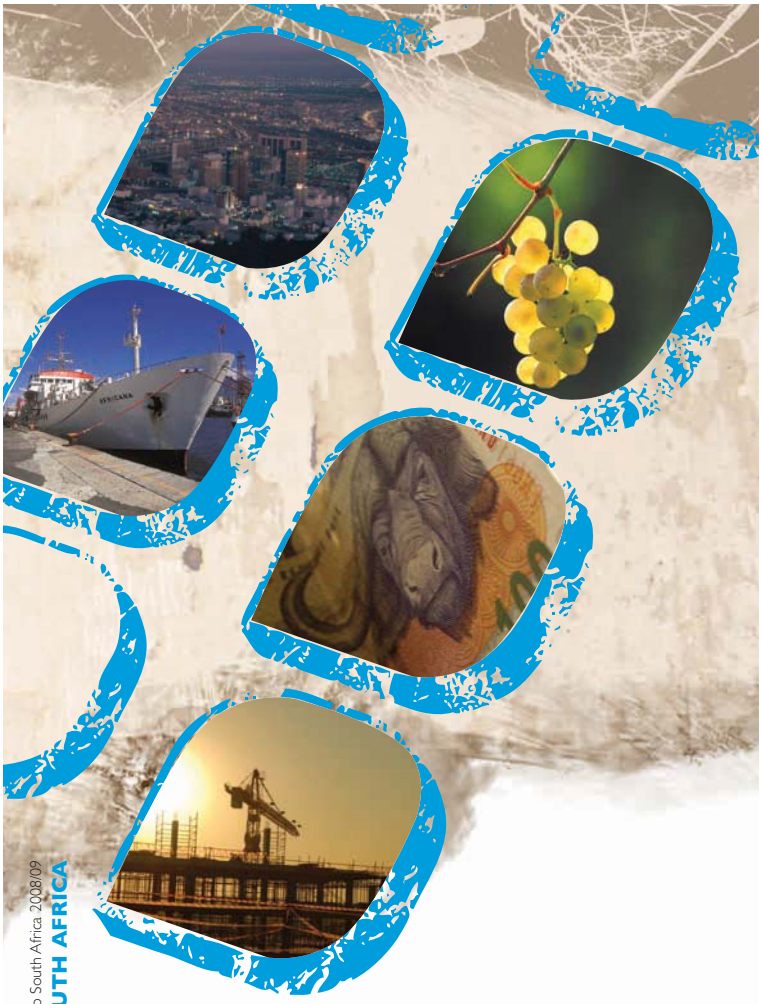
The FSB supervises institutions and services, in terms of several parliamentary Acts that entrust regulatory functions to the registrars of long-term insurance, short-term insurance, friendly societies, pension funds, collective investment schemes, financial services providers, exchanges and financial markets.

Interest rates



Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

SOUTH AFRICAN RESERVE BANK
SOUTH AFRICAN
EK9781503 B
DD4245585 C
RAND



In line with promoting foreign investment in South Africa and positioning the country as a financial centre for Africa, foreign companies, governments and institutions may list on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.

Broadening economic participation

Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) is a government policy aimed at redressing past economic imbalances. BEE is an important policy instrument aimed at broadening the economic base of the country, further stimulating economic growth and creating jobs while eradicating poverty.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE were gazetted on 9 February 2007. These codes are the culmination of the development of the BBBEE Strategy that seeks to enhance the economic participation of black people by growing the economy and reducing income inequality.

Several of the department's programmes aim to bridge the economic divide and broaden economic participation by historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs).

These institutions include:

- The South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf) that provides micro-finance to small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) through a network of financial intermediaries across South Africa. Samaf provides a framework for development micro-finance industry norms and standards, including sustainable lending methods. By May 2008, Samaf had distributed about R8,2 billion, benefiting some 9 000 savers and 1 700 SMEs.
- Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd is a key agency representing the interest of SMEs for access to lending through a network of both the public and private-sector partners.
- The Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda) provides small enterprises around South Africa with a one-stop non-financial support service. It is supporting 26 incubators through the Seda Technology Programme.
- The Black Business Supplier Development Programme disbursed over R86 million in the past four years.
- The Isivande Supplier Fund was launched in March 2008, and aims to provide affordable enterprise loans, ranging from R30 000 to R5 million

Other initiatives include:

- implementing new policy and legislation to promote the development of co-operative enterprises
- implementing the BBBEE Strategy, focusing on the codes of good practice, the sector charters and the establishment of the BEE Advisory Council
- introducing a specific strategy to empower women.

Department of Trade and Industry

The aim of the Department of Trade and Industry is to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade.

The July 2007 Cabinet Lekgotla approved the Industrial Policy Action Plan for the Economic Cluster, to faciliate and support industrial development through the implementation of targeted programmes.

By August 2007, key action plans in four broad sectors – capital goods; transport equipment and metals, automotive assembly and components; chemicals, plastics and pharmaceuticals; and forestry, pulp and paper – had been finalised for immediate implementation.

By July 2008, Cabinet noted the following progress:

Metal fabrication, capital and transport equipment

Key import duties were reviewed and duties on carbon and stainless steel were removed. The National Tooling Initiative was launched in March 2008.

According to Ernst & Young, merger and acquisition activity rose sharply in South Africa in 2007, with total deal volumes up 81% over the previous year and the top 10 deals coming in at R208,1 billion, which is a 51,5% increase over the top 10 deals of 2006. Black Economic Empowerment was one of the main drivers.

Automotives and components

A replacement scheme to the Motor Industry Development Programme had been developed. An empowerment plan for the automotives and components sector was being finalised and was expected to be completed by December 2008.

Chemicals, plastics and pharmaceuticals

The import duty on upstream chemical products and the study on increasing polypropylene value-added products had been finalised.

Investment had been secured for the fluoro-chemicals expansion initiative and the next step was to secure sufficient land for the project.

Wood, paper and furniture

New afforestation targets had been set in collaboration with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and AsgiSA-EC (Ltd). In the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, and an agreement had been reached on general authorisations for afforestation in areas that are not water-stressed. New opportunities are being investigated in Mpumalanga and Limpopo.

A service-provider was appointed to collect data on the small-scale saw-milling industry in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

A furniture incubator was scheduled to start operating in November 2008.

Clothing and textiles

Measures had been implemented to recapture and stabilise the domestic clothing and textile market. Country-of-origin labelling has been in place since July 2007. Quotas for certain Chinese imports have been in place since January 2007. The Interim Textile and Clothing Development Programme, formerly known as the Duty Credit Certificate Scheme, was extended until March 2009 with limited tradability.

A Textiles Engineering Centre of Excellence has been established at the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.

Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa)

Tisa, a division of the Department of Trade and Industry, aims to develop the South African economy by focusing on investment and export development and promotion, and sector policy development.

Tisa is responsible for developing the following priority sectors:

- agroprocessing
- chemical and allied industries
- clothing, textiles, leather and footwear
- cultural industries
- exportable services (business process outsourcing) (BPO)
- information and communications technology and electronics
- metals and mineral-based industries
- tourism
- transport industries.

The unit is dedicated to promoting investment opportunities, marketing investment projects, providing guidance with plant/site locations, especially in industrial development zones (IDZs) and inputting into policy formulation by providing investment information.

BPO is being implemented. By July 2008, nine projects had been approved, 9 132 jobs created and R658 million worth of investment made.

National Industrial Participation Programme (NIPP)

The NIPP has been a key contributor to industrial development. By July 2008, some 150 projects had been implemented, involving US$7,5 billion in investments and exports. Some 12 000 direct jobs had been created.

The Industrial Development Corporation has launched a R1-billion scheme to finance emerging entrepreneurs. The scheme seeks to eliminate problems in the funding process.

Some R400 million has been earmarked for female entrepreneurs and R50 million for the disabled.

The Department of Trade and Industry manages the NIPP, which becomes effective once the foreign content of a procurement, purchase or lease contracts of government departments and parastatals exceeds US$10 million, in which case an NIPP obligation of 30% on the foreign content will be attracted.

The NIPP focuses on national objectives, mainly in the commercial environment. The objectives of the NIPP include fast-tracking investment, fostering partnerships in research and development and creating market opportunities for locally manufactured goods abroad.

By early 2008, the total value of NIPP obligations being monitored was estimated at more than US$15 billion. The programme has benefited South Africans by US$12,6 billion over the last 10 years as a consequence of the country's Strategic Defence Procurement and other government purchases.

This includes investment credits estimated at US$3,5 billion, with export and local sales, technology transfer, BEE and small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMMEs) promotion making up the balance. The benefits cover the areas of BEE, partnerships between participating entities and skills development.

Spatial development

One of South Africa's key industrial policies remains its commitment to fostering sustainable industrial development in areas where poverty and unemployment are at their highest. This objective is implemented through spatial development initiatives (SDIs), which focus high-level support on areas where socio-economic conditions require concentrated government assistance, and where inherent economic potential exists.

The SDI programme consists of 11 local SDIs and four IDZs that are at varying stages of delivery. The SDIs are the Maputo Development Corridor; Lubombo SDI; Richards Bay SDI, including the Durban and Pietermaritzburg nodes; Wild Coast SDI; Fish River SDI; West Coast Investment Initiative; Platinum SDI; Phalaborwa SDI; and the Coast-2-Coast Corridor.

The SDI concept focuses on:
- industry by means of the KwaZulu-Natal and Fish River SDIs
- agritourism, as in the Lubombo and Wild Coast SDIs
- a sectoral mix, for example, the Maputo Development Corridor.

IDZs are located near major transport nodes such as ports or airports. The benefits of IDZs include support to investing companies, especially for greenfield development projects; access to transport for export purposes; waiver of import duties for products that are produced for export; and subsidies for providing skills training to employees.

The IDZs are in Coega/Ngqura, East London, Saldanha and Richards Bay.

By July 2008, the IDZ programme had attracted investment valued at R28 billion.

The Enterprise Organisation (Teo)

Teo's purpose is to stimulate and facilitate the development of sustainable competitive enterprises through the efficient provision of effective and accessible supply-side incentive measures.

It contributes to the realisation of the Department of Trade and Industry's strategic objectives by:
- developing incentives in support of identified policies and sector strategies
- efficiently administering the department's incentive programmes
- facilitating access to and impact of products and services rendered by Teo through a focused business-development effort.

The Small, Medium Enterprise Development Programme (SMEDP) has been a leading incentive. From April 2006 to April 2008, 2 501 projects were approved for a R2,96-billion incentive value, of which over R6 000 million had been disbursed.

The Enterprise Investment Programme comprises two distinct subprogrammes, namely the Tourism Support Programme and the Manufacturing Investment Programme.

By July 2008, the Critical Infrastructure Programme had 19 projects approved with qualifying investment value of R32 billion and infrastructure investment of R9,2 billion.

Taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between residence and source countries of international investors, double taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with many countries.

Exchange control

Exchange control is administered by the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The bank is assisted in this task by a number of banking institutions that have been appointed by the Minister of Finance as authorised dealers in foreign exchange. These institutions undertake foreign-exchange transactions for their own account with their clients, within limits, and subject to conditions laid down by the SARB.

The Government is committed to an open capital market and the gradual relaxation of exchange controls.

Part of the process of gradual exchange-control liberalisation and financial-sector strengthening is the shift to a system of prudential regulation governing the foreign portfolio investment of institutional investors, such as long-term insurers and pension funds.

Prudential regulations are applied internationally to protect policyholders and pensioners from excessive risk, and typically include restrictions on foreign-asset holdings, set at a certain percentage of an institution's total assets or liabilities.

As an interim step towards prudential regulation, retirement funds, long-term insurers, collective investment-scheme management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad:

- Retirement funds and the underwritten policy business of long-term insurers may invest up to 20% of total retail assets. Investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes, collective-investment scheme management companies and investment-linked business of

long-term insurers are restricted to 30% of total retail assets under management.

- Institutional investors are allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency denominated portfolio assets in Africa through foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa) or JSE Ltd, respectively.
- Foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.
- Institutional investors are required to report on a quarterly basis on the allocation of assets according to the major asset classes and provide information from institutions in excess of the foreign-asset limit on proposed portfolio adjustments to bring foreign asset levels back in line.

With effect from 20 February 2008, the pre-approval process for foreign direct investment (FDI) was removed for transactions totalling less than R50 million per company per year. Authorised dealers will administer the directives and guidelines on these types of investments. The exchange-control requirement that a shareholding of at least 25% is obtained was replaced with the requirement that at least 10% of the foreign target entity's voting rights must be acquired.

Where the total cost of FDI exceeds R50 million per company per calendar year, an application must be submitted to the SARB Exchange Control prior to the investment being made.

As a further alternative mechanism of financing offshore investments or to repay existing offshore debt, applications by corporates to engage in corporate asset or share-swap transactions and requests for share placements offshore by locally listed companies, are considered.

The corporates that have existing approved subsidiaries abroad are allowed to expand such activities without prior approval, subject to certain conditions. Dividends declared by the offshore

subsidiaries of South African corporates may be retained offshore and used for any purpose, without recourse to South Africa.

Authorised dealers may also extend foreign currency-denominated facilities to South African corporates for financing approved FDI.

To further enable South African companies, trusts, partnerships and banks to manage their foreign exposure, they are, with effect from 20 February 2008, permitted to participate without restriction in the rand futures market on the JSE Ltd. This dispensation is also extended to investment in inward listed (foreign) instruments on the JSE Ltd and Besa.

JSE Limited

The JSE Limited is licensed as an exchange under the Securities Services Act, 2004 and is Africa's premier exchange. It has operated as a marketplace for the trading of financial products for nearly 120 years. In this time, the JSE has evolved from a traditional floor-based equities trading market to a modern securities exchange providing fully electronic trading, clearing and settlement in equities, financial and agricultural derivatives and other associated instruments. The JSE is also a major provider of financial information.

The Department of Foreign Affairs formulates, co-ordinates, implements and manages South Africa's foreign-policy and international relations programmes throughout the world.

These programmes are guided by a commitment to promoting human rights, democracy, justice and international law; international peace and internationally agreed-upon mechanisms for resolving conflicts; Africa in world affairs; and economic development through regional and international co-operation.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa's development is inextricably linked to the development of Africa and the southern African region. Africa faces the challenge of positioning itself to address the marginalisation of the continent by engaging global role-players on socio-economic development and facilitating a fair and just global order.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organisation for promoting the continent's accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples. South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, which are the:

- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representatives Committee
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament (PAP)
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and People's Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, the African Central Bank and African Monetary Fund, and the African Court of Justice still have to be operationalised.

Through active interventions in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi, Ethiopia/Eritrea, Côte d'Ivoire and Sudan, South Africa supports peace and security efforts in Africa.

The PAP will occupy its current temporary premises in Midrand, Johannesburg, until 2010. Preparations are underway to identify a suitable site and construct the permanent headquarters of the PAP in South Africa.

The AU has made notable progress towards the political and economic integration of the continent:

- the AU has developed the PSC, which is responsible for the resolution of conflicts, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction in conjunction with the United Nations (UN)
- a common defence policy has been adopted, which includes a Standby Force, with a nucleus of five brigades, one from each region
- the Human and Peoples' Rights Court has been established
- the Protocol on the Rights of Women in Africa and the Declaration on Gender Equality is being implemented
- the Protocol on the Court of Justice is underway.

Mission operations

	2001/02	2002/03	2003/04	2004/05	2005/06	2006/07	2007/08
Africa	28	29	33	37	39	42	45
Latin America							10
Asia/ Australasia							31
North America							8
Europe							27
All Missions	92	98	105	110	115	118	121

Diplomats trained

	2004	2005	2006	2007
Foreign Service/Diplomatic training: Foreign Affairs	47	59	69	93
Heads of Mission training	17	20	8	15
Foreign Language training	44	95	82	256

Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

South Africa, in collaboration with key African countries, has been at the forefront in developing Nepad as Africa's premier development programme, in mobilising African and international support for Nepad and in supporting Nepad structures and processes.

Nepad is a holistic, integrated, sustainable-development initiative, primarily established as an African rejuvenation plan that

focuses on creating the conditions for sustainable development, namely:

- peace, security, democracy and political governance
- economic and corporate governance
- regional integration.

The primary objective of Nepad is to eradicate poverty, halt the marginalisation of Africa in the globalisation process, promote the empowerment and economic integration of women and achieve the millennium development goals (MDGs).

Nepad has introduced the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), accepted by member states of the AU as an African self-monitoring mechanism. The peer review process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. The APRM encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices. It is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

The APRM has received international acclaim. There has been a positive response to the APRM. Twenty-nine of a possible 53 countries have voluntarily signed up for comprehensive APRM scrutiny. Seven, including South Africa, have gone through their review processes and eight have received a country support mission. South Africa's review was largely smooth and thorough. South Africa was commended for 18 best practices, which other nations could emulate, including co-operative governance, participatory governance practices, a consultative budget process and provision of basic needs. The report also raised critical issues for South Africa to consider, among them: inequality, poverty eradication, unemployment, crime, models of democracy, accountability of elected officials, race relations and corruption. These issues are addressed in South Africa's comprehensive APRM Programme of Action.

South Africa and the Southern African Development Community (SADC)

The SADC is a critical vehicle for southern African regional development.

It provides for regional peace and security, sectoral co-operation and an integrated regional economy. The SADC member states are Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The SADC is South Africa's major trading partner after the European Union (EU).

The Cabinet Lekgotla, held in July 2008, decided that South Africa should focus on the following priorities:

- enhancing regional political cohesion
- advancing SADC regional economic integration (focusing on the Southern African Customs Union [Sacu])
- intensifying efforts towards infrastructure development
- advancing the undersea cable initiative to expedite the continent's access to the information highway
- advancing food-security issues in the region
- identifying opportunities for the region that are created by the 2010 World Cup
- strengthening the capacity of the SADC Secretariat.

The Summit of the SADC Heads of State and Government was held in August 2008. South Africa took over the chair of the SADC at the summit. The launch of the Free Trade Area (FTA) and the adoption of the SADC Protocol on Gender and Development were some of the highlights of the summit. The launch of the FTA will lay a firm foundation for regional economic integration. The FTA Agreement is part of the SADC's ongoing efforts to create strong relations with southern African countries through trade.

The SADC also aims to create a regional customs union, referred to as the "Southern African Customs Union", by 2010. Other agreements signed at the summit included the Protocol on Science and Technology (S&T) and the agreement amending Article 20 of the Protocol on Trade.

The Seychelles was welcomed back as a member of the SADC. The 2009 Ordinary Summit of Heads of State and Government will be held in 2009 in the DRC.

Asia and Australasia

South Africa and Indonesia were instrumental in the launch of the New Asia-Africa Strategic Partnership (NAASP) in Bandung in 2005 on the 50th anniversary of the Bandung Conference, which cemented Afro-Asian solidarity. NAASP represents a commitment by heads of state and government to help build closer economic ties between Africa and Asia.

South Africa continues to strengthen its relations with the region through increased two-way trade; personal exchanges between high-level dignitaries; and the finalisation of new instruments of co-operation in the S&T fields, through technology transfer, investments and overseas development assistance (ODA) in capacity-building.

While Japan, Malaysia and Taiwan already rank among the foremost sources of foreign direct investment (FDI) in South Africa, the significance of China and India, as sources of investment, is growing. South Africa's multinational companies are finding attractive investment opportunities in Australia, China, Indonesia and Thailand in diverse fields such as mining, minerals processing, electronic media and the petrochemical industry.

South Africa also plays a leading role in the Indian Ocean Rim Association for Regional Co-operation, which creates an opportunity for countries of the South to serve their economic interests.

In October 2008, President Kgalema Motlanthe, the Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, and a large delegation of government officials and businesspeople visited India for the third India-Brazil-South Africa Summit in New Delhi. The South African delegation attended the summit within the context of advancing South Africa's economic interests within the framework of advancing South-South co-operation.

The year 2008 was significant as it marked the 10th anniversary of the establishment of diplomatic relations between South Africa and the People's Republic of China. The celebratory programme commemorating this historic landmark was launched with an exchange of congratulatory messages between the two presidents and their foreign ministers on 1 January 2008. The two countries agreed to sponsor or co-sponsor a series of events during the course of the year. A series of South African weeks celebrating the 10th anniversary were held in Beijing, Shanghai, Guangzhou and Hong Kong.

The Middle East

The Department of Foreign Affairs distinguishes between two clearly identifiable subregions in the Middle East. There is the Levant, which comprises Israel, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine and Syria, and, on the other hand, the Arabian/Persian Gulf Region, consisting of the member states of the Gulf Co-operation Council, namely Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Iran and Yemen.

The Middle East is an important economic region as it occupies a unique geopolitical position in the tricontinental hub of Europe, Asia and Africa.

South Africa's leading trade partners in the region are Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, Qatar, Israel and the UAE.

South Africa supports a just, equitable and comprehensive peace process in the Middle East and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region.

South Africa has embassies in 10 of the 14 countries in the regions: Iran, Israel, Jordan, Kuwait, Oman, Palestine, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Syria and UAE. There are also two subordinate consular missions in the region, namely in Dubai (UAE) and Jeddah (Saudi Arabia).

Of the 14 Middle East countries, 13 have embassies in South Africa – only Bahrain is not represented in this country.

The Americas

The overall bilateral relationship with the United States of America (USA) remains strong, with co-operation expanding on matters of common interest and mutual benefit. Since 1999, business, civilian and governmental links with the USA have expanded. The bilateral relationship has been reviewed on an annual basis within the South Africa-USA Annual Bilateral Forum.

The reviews focus on the achievements and challenges that have arisen and consider the way forward in various identified categories of interaction, namely:

- peace-building and security
- expansion of democracy and freedom
- spreading economic growth and well-being.

The annual consultations between South Africa and Canada, first launched in 2003 as a result of a Declaration of Intent signed between the two countries, remains an effective vehicle for managing relations in all spheres. The year 2008 heralded the fifth consecutive annual consultations in Pretoria. The agenda has expanded in scope and now includes ODA, trade and investment and co-operation in the fields of sport, arts and culture, S&T, safety and security, minerals and energy, agriculture, transport, Africa and multilateral issues.

Bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean will continue advancing the development agenda of the South and the strengthening of co-operation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, interregional and multilateral levels. A number of important visits from Latin America during 2008 provided a platform for closer co-operation.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The South African Embassy in Cuba is accredited to the Dominican Republic, while the South African High Commission in Kingston, Jamaica, is accredited to 15 Caricom countries. A high commission, headed by a *chargé d'affaires*, was established in Trinidad and Tobago in 2006.

The majority of the people of the Caribbean are of African descent and thus have strong historical and cultural links with the continent of Africa. South Africa's endeavour, in conjunction with the AU, to strengthen co-operation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean, has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

Europe

The EU is a unique international organisation comprising 27 member states. Developed primarily as a single market, it is the largest economy in the world, with a combined nominal gross domestic product of almost €12 trillion in 2006. The EU has a common trade policy, a common agricultural and fisheries policy and a regional policy (to assist its underdeveloped regions). Thirteen member states have also adopted a single currency, the Euro. The EU has also developed the Common Foreign and Security Policy and the European Security and Defence Policy.

Since 1994, building on shared values and mutual interests, South Africa and the EU have developed a comprehensive partnership based on the Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA). The TDCA, which was signed in 1999, provisionally came into force in January 2000, and, fully ratified on 1 May 2004, governs South Africa's relations with the EU.

Through this agreement, a partnership has been built, which rests on five pillars: trade, political dialogue, development co-operation, economic co-operation and co-operation in other areas.

In June 2008, South Africa and the governments of Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden signed a Declaration of Intent concerning partnerships in Africa. The Declaration of Intent means that they will work together, based on the principles of:

- ownership
- alignment
- harmonisation
- managing for results
- mutual accountability.

The TDCA provides for an FTA by 2012. The Trade Chapter of the agreement provisionally came into force in January 2000. The TDCA also provides the legal basis for continued EU support for development co-operation activities in South Africa. This support is channelled through the European Programme for Reconstruction and Development, which is the largest single development programme in South Africa that is financed by foreign donors. Further assistance from the EU comes in the form of soft loans from the European Investment Bank.

Germany has made substantial new investments in the South African economy since the 1994 democratic election and remains one of the country's most important trading partners.

The United Kingdom (UK) consistently occupies the third position in terms of South African exports. With the number of tourists from the UK per year approaching half a million, the UK is one of South Africa's most important overseas tourism markets.

President Nicolas Sarkozy of France paid a state visit to South Africa in February 2008. During the visit, he addressed Parliament.

The European Union (EU)-South Africa Summit was held in July 2008 in Bordeaux, France. In a joint statement by the former President of South Africa, Thabo Mbeki, President of France, Nicolas Sarkozy, and President of the EU Commission, Jose Manuel Barroso, the presidents welcomed that, since the establishment of a strategic partnership between South Africa and the EU in May 2007, bilateral relations had developed into an enhanced mutually beneficial partnership, based on strengthened political dialogue and co-operation in a wide range of economic and other areas. The partnership is a reflection of the shared values and interests of South Africa and the EU and an instrument to jointly pursue both sides' commitment to promote liberty, peace, security and stability in the world and Africa in particular. The presidents identified the following possible areas for enhanced bilateral co-operation in future: energy, space, transport, health, information and communications technology, migration and social dialogue. They also welcomed the adoption by the EU of the EU Agenda for Action on the Millennium Development Goals.

Both countries' presidents attended the South Africa-France Business Forum to enhance economic ties at the highest level.

South Africa and France co-operate in various multilateral forums, particularly to improve peace and security on the African continent and support the advancement of global governance.

The strategic nature of South African-Russian relations was significantly consolidated over the past year through continued high-level political dialogue with the Russian Federation. The seventh session of the Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation between the two countries was held in May 2008 in Moscow.

United Nations (UN)

South Africa remains an active participant in ongoing discussions on the reform of the UN and believes that the multilateral system should be fully engaged in the endeavour for human development and poverty eradication, starting with the achievement of the MDGs; the common struggle to address environmental degradation; the pursuit of an overarching human-rights agenda; the promotion of democracy and good governance; and all efforts to combat terrorism and the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction and small arms.

As a party to the UN conventions on climate change, desertification and biodiversity, South Africa is committed to reducing poverty and the loss of biodiversity. South Africa is also firmly committed to the protection of the oceans and the sustainable management of its marine resources.

South Africa continues to reinforce its role as an active and substantive role-player on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms-control issues at national, regional and international levels.

It actively participated in the various nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation forums, including the 2005 Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty Review Conference.

United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

The UNDP has an office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the resident UN co-ordinator for all UN operational activities for development in South Africa.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and major ocean, making up a quarter of the world's population and generating 20% of global trade.

Members range from micro-states in Polynesia to members of the G8, from the smallest and poorest to the richest and most populous, with cross-cutting affiliations straddling the North-South divide.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance; public administration and law; and a common working language, commercial and business practices, and understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Co-operation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the removal of disparities in living standards across the world and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy.

In September 2008, Minister Dlamini Zuma led a South African delegation to a Commonwealth Foreign Ministers meeting in New York.

COMMUNICATIONS

South Africa boasts an outstanding telecommunications infrastructure and a diversity of print and broadcast media.

COMMUNICATIONS

With a network that is 99% digital and includes the latest in fixed-line, wireless and satellite communications, South Africa has the most developed telecommunications network in Africa.

Statistics South Africa, in its *Consumer Survey* of 2007, reported an increase in the ownership of radios, televisions, computers and cellphones between 2001 and 2007.

In 2001, the survey reported a 32,3% cellphone ownership. This grew to 72,9% in 2007. Radio ownership grew from 73% in 2001 to 76,6% in 2007. Computer ownership increased from 8,6% in 2001 to 15,7% in 2007, while television ownership rose from 53,8% in 2001 to 65,6% in 2007.

The demand for landline telephones decreased from 24,4% to 18,6% over the same period owing to an increase in the popularity of cellphones. No comparison could be made with the 2007 survey on Internet facilities, which recorded an ownership of 7,3%.

Such increases demonstrate that more South Africans are being exposed to information and communications technology (ICT).

The Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) is supporting the establishment of a number of multi-media centres, cyberlabs and telecentres in various parts of the country.

Access

The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 seeks to remove policies that hinder the development of cross-sector applications, services and businesses. The Act enables the sector to reflect the integration of telecommunications with information technology (IT), broadcasting and broadcasting signal distribution.

It also empowers citizens with better access to knowledge and information. The Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 has enabled the Department of Communications to liberalise the South African telecommunications market, increase competition and, as a by-product, stimulate the sector to bring down the costs of communications and remove constraints on growth.

The department has identified the following priority areas:

- Broadcasting Digital Migration Strategy: The first terrestrial digital signal was switched on on 1 November 2008 and the analogue one will be switched off on the same date in 2011, giving the country a dual illumination period of three years. The strategy was approved in July 2008. This was an historic milestone in the country as South Africa joined pioneer countries in the ICT sector.
- Universal Service and Access Policy and Strategy: Usaasa was established in terms of Section 58 of the Telecommunications Act, 1996. The main role of the agency is to promote universal service and access to ICTs and services for all South Africans. It also facilitates and offers guidance in evaluating, monitoring and implementing schemes, which propose to improve universal access and service. In addition, it is involved in setting up telecentres, which provide ICT services, especially in rural areas, on a cost-recovery basis.

Mobile communications

In recent years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellphone industry. South Africa has four operators, namely Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Virgin Mobile.

Internet

African Internet usage has trebled to more than 12 million since 2000. South Africa remains the continent's dominant Internet centre, with more than a quarter of Africa's users. Johannesburg-based companies are central to the Internet industry. Nine of the 12 major Internet service-providers listed by the Internet Service-Providers Association *(www.ispa.org.za)* are based in Johannesburg.

The Johannesburg Internet Exchange is the larger of two national hubs that connect Internet service-providers to a single network. Most Johannesburg hotels are online, and all but the smallest businesses have access, usually via a fixed line. Internet cafés are readily available, particularly in areas where tourists congregate.

Telkom

Telkom has been operating as a commercial company since October 1991 and is the largest provider of communications services in Africa, according to operating revenue and assets.

For the financial year to 31 March 2008, the Telkom Group posted strong financial results:

- operating revenue up 9% to R56,3 billion
- operating profit increased by 0,1% to R14,5 billion
- cash generated from operations increased by 3,6% to R21,3 billion
- ADSL subscribers grew 61,2% to 412 190, just short of Telkom's target.

Neotel

South Africa's second landline operator, Neotel, aims to reduce the cost of doing business by enhancing the operational efficiencies of companies through the optimal use of advanced ICTs.

The company's various telecommunications licences allow the company to provide the entire range of telecommunications services with the exception of full mobility.

Postal sector

The Government-subsidised South African Post Office (Sapo) is required to provide a basic letter service that is reasonably accessible to all.

Sapo delivers almost six million letters per day to 10 million addresses in South Africa. It has 2 550 outlets covering the length and breadth of South Africa.

The E-Skills Academy of South Africa, launched in March 2008, was formed by Oracle Corporation, in collaboration with other major multinational information technology companies and the Department of Communications.
The academy focuses on the accelerated delivery of internationally accredited information and communications technology courses and professional qualifications that are specifically designed to meet the "job-ready" skills requirements of technology users throughout the South African economy.

In 2008, the South African Post Office printed two million postage stamps with Nelson Mandela's picture to mark the occasion of Madiba's 90th birthday. Two different stamps were released. The first was a domestic postage stamp costing R2,05, featuring a photo of Mandela taken by Halden Krog. The second was an international postage stamp costing R4,90, featuring a more demure portrait painted by Cyril Coetzee.

Annually, Sapo prints more than 384 million stamps and serves stamp collectors and dealers throughout the world.

Several initiatives via Sapo have also resulted in bringing ICT services closer to the people, such as:

- launching the Postbank visa card for elderly clients, reducing the necessity to carry cash
- opening 72 new post offices, of which 52 are in rural under-serviced areas
- concluding agreements with seven municipalities for the collection of municipal rates and taxes
- partnering with provincial governments in the renewal of motor-vehicle licences
- partnering with the South African Social Security Agency in the disbursement of social-security grants.

South Africa's first stamp, the Cape Triangular, was issued in the Cape of Good Hope in 1853 and is valued at about R1 million.

The media

South Africa's Bill of Rights guarantees the freedom of the press and other media.

Broadcasting

The independence of the public broadcaster, the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC), is guaranteed by legislation. The SABC is being corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate.

COMMUNICATIONS

The SABC reached an agreement with FIFA on the establishment of public viewing areas outside the host cities, to ensure that more South Africans will share in the experience of the 2010 Soccer World Cup. The SABC is working with the provincial and local governments on the location of these areas.

Radio

In 2008, the SABC's national radio network comprised 18 stations broadcasting in 11 languages, reaching an average daily adult audience of 19 million.

SABC News provides news and current affairs services to both SABC radio and television. For its domestic coverage, SABC News has 13 editorial offices, while world news is provided by strategically placed news bureaus, foreign correspondents and international news agencies.

Copy supplied to Radio News amounts to almost a million words a day, and is compiled around the clock into a weekly total of 300 bulletins and 27 current affairs programmes. Programmes are produced weekly in 11 languages on the SABC's radio services.

There is a public broadcasting service radio station for each language group.

Channel Africa Network comprises four language services, reaching millions of listeners throughout Africa. Broadcasts are in English, French, Kiswahili, Portuguese, Chinyanja and Silozi. The network targets audiences in Africa and the Indian Ocean islands, and concentrates on providing programmes with African content.

The Independent Communications Authority of South Africa has granted licences to the following private radio stations:

- Radio Algoa
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- Highveld Stereo
- Radio 702
- Radio Jacaranda
- Radio Oranje

In August 2008, Cabinet noted progress that had been made on information and communications technology interventions, particularly regarding broadcasting digital migration and the deployment of submarine cables:

- Infraco had reserved manufacturing slots with suppliers for the African West Coast Cable. The main objective of the cable is to ensure the sufficient supply of broadband and connectivity with the European markets.
- On the UHURUnet broadband undersea cable, agreements had been reached with Nigeria and discussions were underway with Kenya to finalise implementation plans.

- East Coast Radio
- P4
- Cape Talk MW
- Radio KFM

Community radio stations have a huge potential for the support of, among other things, cultural and educational information exchanges. These radio stations use all indigenous languages, ensuring that people receive information in languages they understand.

Television

South Africa has the largest television audience in Africa. There are more than four million licensed television households.

The SABC's national television network comprises three full-spectrum free-to-air channels and one satellite pay-TV channel aimed at audiences in Africa. Combined, the free-to-air sound broadcasting stations broadcast in 11 languages and reach a daily adult audience of almost 20 million people via the terrestrial signal distribution network and a satellite signal.

In October 1998, the country's first privately owned free-to-air television channel, e.tv, started operations.

M-Net became South Africa's first private subscription television service when it launched in 1986. Today, it broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to subscribers in more than 50 countries across the African continent and adjacent Indian Ocean islands.

COMMUNICATIONS

MultiChoice Africa (MCA) was formed in 1995 to manage the subscriber services of its sister company, M-Net. It became the first African company on the continent to offer digital satellite broadcasting. In July 2008, Multichoice launched high-definition television, the first in Africa.

MCA is 100% owned by the MIH Group, which is listed on the JSE Ltd, the Nasdaq in New York, and AEX in Amsterdam.

Print

Technically, the local print media rate among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, identified by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Biggest weekly and daily newspapers

January to March 2008	
Weekly papers	
Sunday Times	504 193
Soccer-Laduma	292 701
Rapport	301 827
Sunday World	203 460
Sunday Sun	202 524
Daily papers	
Daily Sun	499 436
The Star	68 993
Daily News	52 018
Sowetan	145 173
Beeld	105 149

Source: Audit Bureau of Circulations

South African newspapers and magazines are mainly organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd, and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M & G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

Since 1994, the major press groups have embarked on programmes to boost Black Economic Empowerment in media ownership.

Newspapers

The Audited Bureau of Circulations' figures for the first quarter of 2008 were released on 15 May 2008. When circulation information for the first quarter in 2008 was compared with that of the same period in 2007, it emerged that daily newspapers had shown no growth, local weekly newspapers had shown a decline of 11,3% and community newspapers had grown by 6,2%, almost certainly the result of six new titles. Free newspapers grew by 12,9%, with 13 new titles added, and four titles eliminated.

Almost 150 regional or country newspapers, most of which are weekly tabloids, serve particular towns or districts in the country by covering local affairs and carrying local advertising. Most are published in English or Afrikaans, and many are bilingual. The most popular publication day is Thursday, followed by Tuesday, and the bigger publications appear twice weekly.

The only truly national newspapers are the *Sunday Times, Rapport, Sunday Independent, Sunday Sun, City Press, Sunday World* and *Sunday Tribune.*

Magazines

The magazine industry in South Africa is fiercely competitive, with new titles appearing all the time, despite the worldwide challenge from electronic and interactive media. Judging from the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, many readers are still attracted to print.

Top 10 magazines based on net sales, January to March 2008
1 Huisgenoot
2 You
3 Move!
4 TV Plus
5 Sarie
6 Cosmopolitan
7 People
8 Rooi Rose
9 Car
10 True Love

Source: Audit Bureau of Circulations

The trend to target certain niche markets with specialised publications is popular in the magazine industry and has led this section to grow, with 40% more titles over the last 10 years.

However, there is evidence to suggest that the overall reading population in South Africa is shrinking, which is a concern for the industry.

Weeklies *Huisgenoot* and *You* are the two biggest money-making magazines in South Africa.

Among the monthlies, women's magazines are still the most widely distributed despite declining sales. *Sarie, Rooi Rose, Cosmopolitan, Move!* and *True Love* are all in the top 10.

In 2008, the Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism was awarded to Max du Preez.

Online media

Creamer Media's industrial and political websites dominate the fastest growing sites. According to Nielsen Online, *Engineering News* was the fastest growing website in South Africa in 2007,

growing by 190%, from 23 455 unique browsers (UBs) in March 2007 to 67 924 in March 2008. The overall market grew by 44% in the same period, from 3,4 million to 4,9 million UBs.

Creamer Media produces three of the four fastest-growing sites – *Engineering News, Mining Weekly* and *Polity*.

News24 was the most popular South African website, with over 1,1 million UBs in March 2008. Of the 10 most popular websites with comparable data in 2007 only *SuperSport* (103%) and *Yellow Pages* (51%) had a growth rate of above overall market growth (44%).

News agencies

The national news agency, the South African Press Association, is a co-operative, non-profit organisation.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are Reuters, *Agence France-Presse*, Associated Press, *Deutsche Presse-Agentur* and United Press International.

SABC TV News flights 27 stand-alone daily bulletins on four channels, covering all 11 official languages.

Media diversity

The independent Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) is jointly funded by government, the media and other donors.

Headed by a nine-member board, the MDDA works to foster diversity, particularly in community and small commercial media, and to redress imbalances in the industry.

The MDDA awarded its first grants to community and small commercial media projects in January 2004.

By January 2008, the MDDA had spent about R55 million in grants for 172 media projects. More than 40 of those did not exist prior to the establishment of the MDDA.

Advertising

Several South African agencies are active in Africa. The industry is self-regulated through the Advertising Standards Authority.

COMMUNICATIONS

South African marketers spend a lot on advertising. According to Nielsen AdDynamix, gross expenditure for the year ending June 2008 was R24,1 billion, up 11,2% from R21,7 billion in the previous 12-month period.

The South African transport sector employs 584 000 people in the formal and informal sectors, representing 4,3% of the active population.

TRANSPORT

The aim of the Department of Transport is to lead the provision of an integrated, sustainable, reliable and safe transport system, by planning, developing, co-ordinating, promoting and implementing transport policies and strategies.

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

The Public Transport Strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) systems in cities.

The essential feature of the Public Transport Strategy is the phased extension of mode-based vehicle recapitalisation into IRPTNs. These networks comprise an integrated package of rapid rail, BRT and taxi and metered taxi priority networks, especially in major cities. The strategy is expected to improve public-transport services for over half the country's population.

Full special needs and wheelchair access for all trunk corridor rail and road vehicles will also be implemented.

2010 Transport Action Plan

The 2010 Transport Action Plan supplements the Public Transport Strategy. It maps out phase one (2007 – 2010) to fast-track an implementation programme over the next two years that targets the initial development of high-quality IRPTNs in 2010 World Cup host cities. The plan integrates transport, security, emergency response and socio-economic development.

The broad principles of the 2010 Transport Action Plan are to:

- accelerate existing transport plans and maximise existing transport infrastructure
- improve public-transport services
- accelerate the implementation of government's economic and sustainable development policies.

2010 FIFA World Cup™ transport projects are funded through the Public Transport Infrastructure and System (PTIS) Grant, with an allocation of R11,7 billion. Government is using the World Cup to

spur a major revolution in South Africa's transport system through investments in:

- public transport and road infrastructure
- rail upgrades
- intermodal facilities
- BRT systems
- inner-city mobility systems
- call centre systems
- airport-city links
- freight services
- passenger safety
- intelligent transport systems.

The PTIS Grant for the 2010 World Cup was increased from R9,2 billion to R13,6 billion, as announced in the National Budget of February 2008.

By 2008, the implementation of the PTIS Grant had gathered momentum, with most of the infrastructure either under construction or scheduled to start. In addition, operational transport planning was at an advanced stage.

Agencies

The following entities report to the Minister of Transport: the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral), South African Maritime Safety Authority, Cross-Border Road Transport Agency, South African Civil Aviation Authority, Road Accident Fund, Urban Transport Fund, Air Traffic and Navigation Services Company, Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) and the National Transport Information System.

Transnet Limited

Transnet, which is transforming into a focused freight transport and logistics company, comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (TFR) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) – which fulfils the landlord function for South Africa's port system

- Transnet Port Terminals – which manages port and cargo terminal operations in the nation's leading ports
- Transnet Pipelines – the fuel and gas pipeline business, which pumps and manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines.

Transnet is investing R82 billion over the next five years, of which R40,8 billion is being spent on upgrading freight rail infrastructure and rail engineering. The upgrading of the freight rail infrastructure is key to the objective of shifting more freight from the road network to the rail network as well as finding the balance between road and rail in respect of the transportation of goods.

Road transport

South Africa has the longest road network of any country in Africa. The Department of Transport continues to integrate and improve the road network by ensuring that it is well developed, well maintained and safe.

Sanral's main objectives are financing, managing control over, planning, developing, rehabilitating and maintaining the South African national roads network. It is responsible for the national road network of 16 750 km. About R70 billion will be used in the next three years for road infrastructure, maintenance and upgrading and an additional R3 billion for the Expanded Public Works Programme for access roads, all of which is an attempt by government to alleviate traffic congestion while creating jobs.

Minibus taxis are responsible for 65% of the 2,5 billion annual passenger trips in urban areas, as well as a high percentage of rural and intercity transport.

Buses and trains account for 21% and 14% respectively of all public transport.

According to the *National Household Travel Survey* (2003), about 26% of households in South Africa have access to a motor

With over 2,4 million passenger journeys being made every day, South Africa has the fastest growing railway system in Africa.

car. At 108 cars per 1 000 of the population, car ownership in South Africa remains in its infancy.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire to have an integrated public-transport system.

The main objectives of the TRP are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy that puts the passenger first and that meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability. The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but is also concerned with the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team to consider specific interventions to turn around the taxi industry.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate type of vehicles, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

By May 2008, the scrapping of old and unsafe taxi vehicles and their replacement with new taxi vehicles with better safety features was on track. By July 2008, more than 14 000 old and unroadworthy vehicles had been removed from the roads and R700 million had been paid to taxi operators as scrapping allowances.

Construction of the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link commenced in September 2006. The project will comprise an 80-kilometre route and 10 new stations. The Gautrain Project will reduce the severe traffic congestion along the Johannesburg-Tshwane traffic corridor, which accommodates 300 000 vehicles per day, growing at an estimated 7% per year. It is estimated that the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link will reduce this number by 20%.

Goods transport

The fourth *State of Logistics Survey* (2007) shows that about 87% of all land feight tonnage is carried by road, with the remainder carried by rail. Generally, road transport costs anything between 30% and 50% more than rail transport – additional costs which cargo owners and end customers have to bear.

The National Freight Logistics Strategy is being implemented and seeks, among other things, to integrate the first and second economies, and to support the integration of marginalised local economies with main logistics corridors.

The key objective is to reduce the costs of doing business and remove inefficiencies placed on businesses and their long-term sustainability.

The Department of Transport, in close co-operation with the provincial road-traffic authorities, is implementing the National Overload Control Strategy to protect road infrastructure, improve road safety and ensure seamless movement of cargo.

South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC)-Metrorail

The SARCC was established in 1990 to provide commuter rail services in South Africa. All the passenger rail entities in South Africa are being consolidated. The first phase of the consolidation has been concluded with Metrorail being transferred from Transnet to the SARCC with effect from 1 May 2006. Shosholoza

Between 2007 and May 2008, the South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC)-Metrorail upgraded over 790 coaches. It had committed another 700 coaches to be refurbished in 2008/09 at an estimated cost of almost R2 billion.

Several upgrading works on stations, rail track, signalling and rolling stock are proceeding in all SARCC areas of responsibility.

Government has increased funding for passenger rail services to about R18 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period.

Meyl has been part of the SARCC with effect from 1 April 2008. However, Transnet continued to manage and run the business on behalf of the SARCC until September 2008 when the parties concluded a Sale of Business Agreement to allocate assets and the accompanying risks facing Shosholoza Meyl.

The corporation's role as concessionaire is to establish and monitor service standards, safety and security levels, and operating efficiencies. Up to 1,7 million people use the commuter rail service daily.

The SARCC infrastructure and assets comprise 478 stations, some 2 240 km of electrified single-rail track and 4 564 coaches.

The new international arrivals' hall at OR Tambo International Airport was opened in September 2008. This is the first phase of the R2,3-billion Central Terminal Building (CTB) at the airport. International passengers will experience an improved arrivals' facility, which includes a more user-friendly customs-control process. Passengers will also enjoy a new arrivals' concourse, which is two and half times bigger than the airport's previous arrivals' halls.

According to Airports Company South Africa (Acsa), the CTB development is the largest single terminal building project that the company has ever embarked upon. The 18 000-m^2 space will ultimately include retail facilities such as a post office, cellular phone shops and foreign-exchange services as well as various eateries. By April 2009, the departures' facility of the CTB was expected to be fully operational.

The construction of the OR Tambo Gautrain Station was completed and has been handed over for final finishing to Bombela, the consortium of companies that holds the concession to build, operate and maintain the Gautrain. The station was the first Gautrain station to be completed and handed over. The rail line will be elevated above the airport precinct and will connect directly to the CTB.

Transnet Freight Rail

TFR has a 20 247-km rail network, of which about 1 500 km comprise heavy haul lines. The network connects the ports and

hinterland of South Africa as well as the rail networks of the sub-Saharan region. TFR infrastructure represents about 80% of Africa's rail infrastructure.

It operates freight trains, serving customers in the following major segments:

- mining: coal, iron ore, manganese, granite, asbestos, chrome and non-ferrous metals
- manufacturing: chemicals, fuel and petroleum, fertiliser, cement, lime, iron steel and scrap
- agriculture and forestry: grain, stockfeed and milling, timber, paper and publishing, and fast-moving consumer goods
- containers and automotive: intermodal wholesale, automotive and industrial.

TFR offers freight logistics solutions to customers in all industries countrywide.

Civil aviation

Acsa owns and operates the 10 principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban. The others are domestic airports in Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley, Upington and Pilanesberg. Other airports in South Africa include Lanseria (Midrand), Gateway (Polokwane), Nelspruit and Kruger (Mpumalanga).

The aviation sector is critical, particularly with regard to South Africa's ability to host the 2010 World Cup. Construction at airports, particularly those that will be directly affected by World Cup activities, is progressing well. Passenger traffic across the Acsa network continues to surge and is estimated to increase from 32,8 million in 2006/07 to over 43 million passengers per year by 2010. Meeting this growth in passenger demand has necessitated enormous investment in airport infrastructure.

It is estimated that air traffic in South Africa will be in excess of 45 million passengers per year by 2012, from 32,8 million in 2008.

At OR Tambo International Airport, the central terminal building (CTB) has a budget of R2,2 billion; upgrade of the international departures terminal a budget of R105 million; second multi-storey parkade a budget of R486 million; remote aircraft aprons a budget of R840 million; and the international pier a budget of R533 million.

The CTB project is scheduled for final completion by the end of 2009, six months before the 2010 Soccer World Cup. It will also be connected to the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link for easy access to train transportation to Johannesburg, Sandton and Pretoria.

At Cape Town International Airport, there are two main projects, namely the CTB with a budget of R1,5 billion and the second multi-storey parkade with a budget of R394 million. By 2008, work on the CTB was progressing well. The construction of a second multi-storey car park, which will be located directly opposite the international terminal, is also in progress. The parkade will have 4 000 bays, which is almost double the current capacity.

Acsa is developing the new greenfield international airport at La Mercy, outside Durban, at a cost of R6,7 billion. The Department of Transport is busy with runway and terminal refurbishment at Bloemfontein Airport at a cost of R121 million and R49 million respectively. There is also a terminal upgrade at East London at a cost of R98 million and runway refurbishment at Port Elizabeth at a cost of R68 million.

On 3 February 2009, approximately 150 invited guests gathered at the Gautrain depot in Midrand to get a glimpse of the Gautrain's world-class features during a quick ride on the three-kilometre test track. Branded in the Gautrain's distinctive golden colour, the renowned ELECTROSTAR series has been customised to meet South African requirements. Once the Gautrain is up and running, a trip from Sandton to OR Tambo International Airport will take up to 12 minutes. The train service will be complemented by a dedicated bus fleet which will transport passengers in air-conditioned comfort between the stations and surrounding suburbs and business nodes. The bus fleet will initially comprise 125 buses running on approximately 36 routes, covering some 26 000 bus-km every day.

TRANSPORT

By October 2007, there were 10 067 aircraft on South Africa's register. Air travel in South Africa has grown more than 10% per year over the past three years, largely due to the proliferation of low-cost airlines following the deregulation of the industry in the early 1990s and the increased volume of international traffic flowing into the country. This can be evidenced by the fact that, in 1993, fewer than 12 international airlines flew into South Africa. However, this number had increased to 20 by 1995 and now more than 70 international airlines fly into the country regularly.

South African Airways (SAA)

In August 2008, SAA was named the best airline in Africa at the 2008 Skytrax World Airline Awards, which are based on an annual survey by British aviation experts Skytrax. The *Skytrax Survey* is recognised as an independent passenger survey of global airline standards. SAA also won the Skytrax Award for Best Cabin Crew in Africa.

SAA is the only non-stop service from the United States of America (USA) to South Africa, with daily departures from Washington, DC and a daily direct service from New York. The airline recently upgraded its in-flight entertainment on these flights, increasing the number of movies available from 15 to 44, ranging from global blockbusters to more culturally diverse options that include South African and Hindi choices. There are a number of channels with TV programmes and music from many different genres on offer.

Each seat on board includes a personal, on-demand entertainment system with a full range of upgraded content. Travellers in premium class enjoy 180-degree fully flat-bed seats. SAA's local network includes connections to more than 20 South African destinations and more than 20 cities across the rest of the continent.

Transnet intends to invest about R26 billion in the next five years in its Port Authority and Port Terminals divisions, primarily to support growth in the dry-bulk, liquid bulk, containers, automotive and break-bulk sectors.

As a Star Alliance member, SAA also offers its customers 975 destinations in 162 countries and 18 100 flights daily, including convenient connections from more than 30 cities in the USA through code-share service with Star Alliance member United Airlines. Members of United Airlines' Mileage Plus, US Airways' Dividend Miles and Air Canada's Aeroplan programmes can earn and redeem miles on all SAA flights.

South Africa has a number of airlines flying between its major cities, and to some of its smaller ones, with fares ranging from first-class to cut-price economy. Flights can be booked online from anywhere in the world. Eight major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

Ports

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- co-ordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

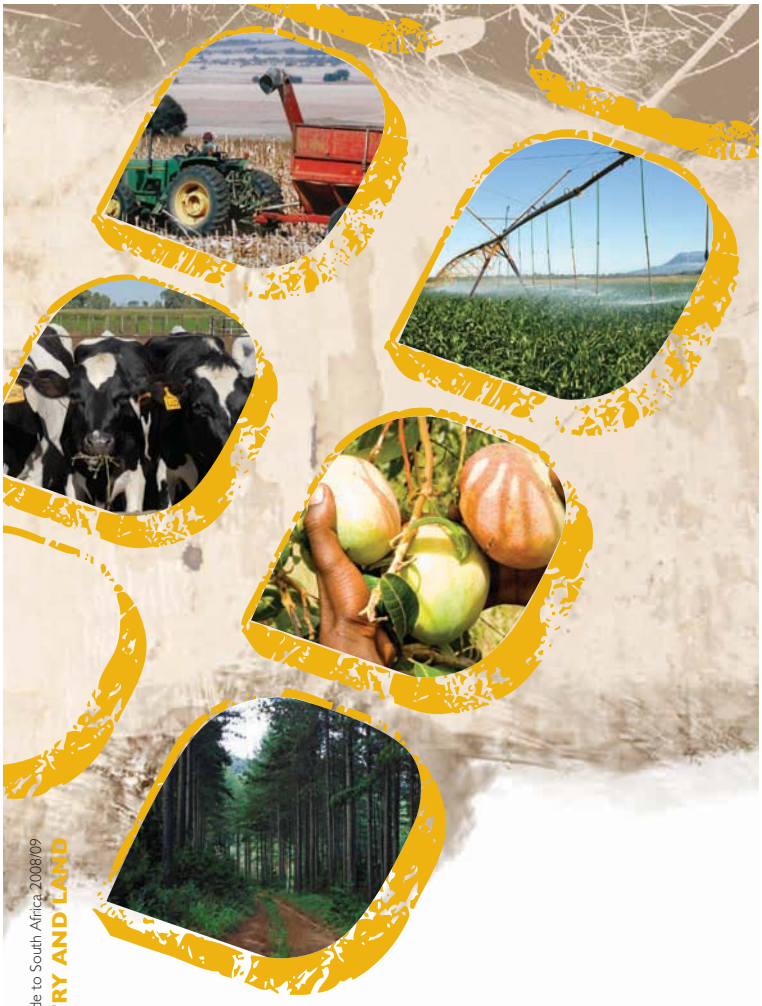
- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

The R11,2-billion New Multi-Product Pipeline (NMPP) between Durban and Gauteng is a priority project to ensure security of supply of liquid fuels to the Reef. The NMPP Project, the largest single project in Transnet's portfolio, encompasses the replacement and expansion in capacity of the Durban to Johannesburg pipeline. The NMPP Project also addresses the capacity constraints in the Inland Network, which services the Alrode, Tarlton, Rustenburg, Witbank, Pretoria, Kroonstad and Klerksdorp regions, resulting from the increased demand requirements in these regions.

The National Ports Regulator, which was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005, is responsible for the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competiton, hears appeals and complaints and investigates such complaints.

The adoption and implementation of measures to enhance maritime security have resulted in South Africa being fully compliant with the International Ships and Ports Security Code since July 2004.



The total contribution of agriculture into the economy increased from R27 billion in 2001 to R36 billion in 2007. The total gross value of agricultural production for 2007/08 is estimated at R111 760 million compared to R93 390 million the previous year.

South Africa has a dual agricultural economy: a well-developed commercial sector and a predominantly subsistence sector. About 12% of the country can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle ranching in the bushveld, and sheep farming in the more arid regions.

Economic contribution

Primary agriculture contributes about 2,5% to the gross domestic product (GDP) of South Africa and about 8% to formal employment.

However, there are strong linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector comprises about 12% of GDP.

Although South Africa has the ability to be self-sufficient in virtually all major agricultural products, the rate of growth in exports has been slower than that of imports. The only increase in agricultural export volumes occurred during the period of exchange-rate depreciation in 2002 and came to about nine million tons (mt). Major import products include wheat, rice, vegetable oils and poultry meat.

Production

Producer prices of agricultural products increased, on average, by 24,9% from 2006 to 2007, compared to an increase of 17,9% during the previous year.

In 2007, the producer prices of field crops rose by 41,9%, against an increase of 32,4% the previous year. This increase was mainly the result of a 44,7% increase in the price of summer grains and increases of 90,4% and 51,9% in the prices of winter cereals and dry beans, respectively.

Producer prices of horticultural products increased by 20,6% in 2007 compared to 2006. Prices of vegetables increased, on average, by 20,6% during 2007, while the prices of fresh fruit increased by 27,7%.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2007	(R'000)
Field crops	
Maize	11 451 679
Wheat	3 878 983
Hay	2 314 555
Grain sorghum	294 562
Sugar cane	4 198 557
Groundnuts	285 121
Tobacco	228 445
Sunflower seed	921 985
Cotton	87 809
Other	1 525 972
Total	**25 287 668**
Horticulture	
Viticulture	2 907 086
Citrus fruit	5 013 038
Subtropical fruit	1 689 069
Deciduous and other fruit	5 755 887
Vegetables	5 476 294
Potatoes	3 405 277
Other	1 437 148
Total	**25 683 799**
Animal products	
Wool	1 312 768
Poultry and poultry products	20 409 362
Cattle and cattle products	12 689 536
Sheep and goats slaughtered	2 296 452
Pigs slaughtered	2 247 136
Milk	7 565 475
Other	2 446 444
Total	**48 967 173**
Grand total	**99 938 640**

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture

The Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme assisted 817 projects, benefiting 53 248 people in 2007/08. A larger number of projects than targeted was reached (817 instead of 786) but the number of beneficiaries was lower than that targeted. An estimated 1 085 projects were targeted to benefit from the programme in 2008/09, reaching an estimated 37 900 beneficiaries.

The producer prices of animal products were 14,5% higher in 2007 than in 2006. Prices received for pastoral products increased by 29,9%. The price farmers received for milk was 33,8% higher.

Prices received for poultry products rose by 13%.

Field crops and horticulture

- Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) for animal and human consumption.

  South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC region, with an average production of about 8,9 mt a year over the past 10 years.

The South African wine industry has launched a training programme in the run-up to the 2010 Soccer World Cup that will see more than 2 000 people receive specialised wine-steward training in preparation for the event.

Known as Project Laduma, the skills-development initiative is aimed at contributing to job creation and the transfer of marketable skills in South Africa.

Wines of South Africa, the representative body of the local industry's export market, believes the initiative will help market South African wines to the mass of international consumers who are expected to arrive in South Africa for the World Cup. In keeping with the 2010 theme, 2 010 candidates will undergo the Sector Education and Training Authority-accredited training course. Half of the candidates will be selected from the hospitality sector, while the other half will be recruited from unemployed South Africans.

The AgriBEE (Black Economic Empowerment) Sector Transformation Charter was launched in April 2008. The objectives of the AgriBEE Charter are to implement initiatives to include more black South Africans in all levels of agricultural activity and enterprises by:

- increasing the extent to which black women, people living with disabilities and the youth own and manage existing and new agricultural enterprises
- increasing their access to economic activities, infrastructure and skills training
- empowering rural and local communities to gain access to agricultural economic activities, land, agricultural infrastructure, ownership and skills
- increasing the representation of black women and black designated groups.

It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 6,9 mt of maize was produced in 2006/07 on two million hectares of land (developing agriculture included).

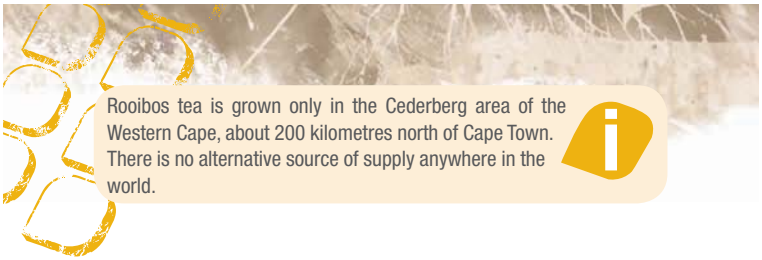
- Wheat is produced in the Western Cape and the Free State. Average wheat production has totalled about 2 mt a year over the past 10 years.
- South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed. An area of 316 350 ha was planted in 2006/07, producing 300 000 t.
- Some 20 mt of sugar are produced per season. About 50% of this is marketed in southern Africa, while the rest is exported to markets in Africa, the Middle East, North America and Asia.
- South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut flowers, which account for more than half of proteas sold on the world market.

Some other crops:

- Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. In 2007/08, income from deciduos fruit rose by 10,6% to R6 425 million.
- In 2007/08, the gross income from horticultural products increased by 16,8% to R27 408 million.
- The gross value of subtropical fruit rose by 11,3% to R1 818 million.
- Internationally, South Africa's wines are highly competitive, with the industry showing a sustainable and increasingly positive trend over recent years. The wine industry contributes some R163 billion a year to South Africa's GDP and employs 257 000 people directly and indirectly, while an additional R4,2 billion is generated annually through wine tourism. The area planted under wine grapes has increased constantly since 1990, and totalled 101 958 ha in 2007. The 2007 harvest amounted to 1 351 447 t.

  In April 2008, the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems estimated the 2008 wine and grape crop at 776 litres per gross ton.

  In 2007/08, income from viticulture increased by 5,4% to R2 974 million.
- Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha). A total of 2,2 mt of citrus were produced in 2006/07, which was a 10% increase compared to 2005/06. In 2007/08, income from citrus showed the biggest increase of 35% and amounted to R5 318 million.
- Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.



Rooibos tea is grown only in the Cederberg area of the Western Cape, about 200 kilometres north of Cape Town. There is no alternative source of supply anywhere in the world.

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2007 ('000 t)

Maize	7 339
Wheat	1 913
Sugar cane	19 724
Grain sorghum	202
Groundnuts	58
Sunflower seed	311
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 701
Citrus fruit	2 281
Subtropical fruit	692
Vegetables	2 079
Potatoes	1 917

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture

Livestock

Nearly 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is mainly suitable for extensive livestock farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions. Stockbreeders concentrate mainly on developing breeds that are well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions. The livestock sector contributes up to 49% of agricultural output.

By mid-2007, there were 13,5 million cattle, 24,9 million sheep and 6,4 milion goats. South Africa normally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme aims to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

By May 2008, through the Household Food Production Programme, 15 765 food-production packages had been distributed and 6 390 vegetable gardens established.

Through the Farmer Support Programme, 903 clients received Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa loans and R8,5 million was disbursed between January and March 2008.

The Land and Agrarian Reform Project (LARP) is aimed at accelerating and aligning land and agrarian reform in South Africa. The LARP is a joint project of the Department of Land Affairs, the Department of Agriculture, provincial departments of agriculture, agricultural state-owned enterprises and sector partners. The LARP focuses on the following objectives:

- redistributing five million hectares of white-owned agricultural land to 10 000 new agricultural producers
- increasing black entrepreneurs in the agribusiness industry by 10%
- providing universal access to agricultural-support services to the target groups
- increasing agricultural production by 10% to 15% for the target groups, under the Ilima-Letsema Campaign
- increasing agricultural trade by 10% to 15% for the target groups.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The bank provides a comprehensive range of retail and wholesale financial products and services designed to meet the needs of commercial and developing farmers and agriculture-related businesses.

Forestry

South Africa has developed one of the largest planted forests in the world.

Plantations cover about 1,3 million ha of South Africa's land surface. Production from these plantations amounted to more than 22 million m^3 of commercial roundwood, valued at almost R5,1 billion. Together with processed wood products, total turnover for the industry was about R15 billion in 2006, including R6,8 billion worth of wood-pulp.

The forestry sector employs close to 170 000 people and contributes more than R16 billion to the South African economy.

Champion trees, as protected under the National Forests Act, 1998, are proclaimed every year in the *Government Gazette*. These are individual trees and groups of trees (shortlisted by a panel of experts) considered to be of national conservation importance.

Among the listed trees are:

- the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route
- the Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay
- the Sagole Baobab in Limpopo (one of the largest trees in South Africa)
- camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate three centuries ago.

Guidelines have been developed for the use of these trees to ensure the continued benefits they offer the people of the country, both economically and ecologically.

The impact of the sector is felt in rural areas and there is significant scope for forestry to expand and contribute towards uplifting those in the Second Economy.

Indigenous forests

There are about 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food. It is estimated that around 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural habitats.

South Africa has 182 primary wood-processing plants, 177 of which are owned by the private sector and five of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, some 99 are sawmills; 13 mining timber sawmills; 38 pole-treating plants; 22 pulp, paper and board mills; one match factory; and four charcoal plants. The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2006 was 23 million m^3 valued at R5,2 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R15 679 billion.

South Africa has a detailed inventory of all its natural forests, which is used to accurately monitor changes in forest areas. The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has completed a classification of natural forests, represented by 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and redemarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Restructuring the forests

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is pursuing a restructuring programme in the forestry sector, which will eventually see the department becoming a sector leader and regulator of forestry in South Africa.

South Africa's national tree, the yellowwood tree (*Podocarpus*), can grow to a height of more than 40 m with a girth of 8 m, and can live for up to 800 years.

Land affairs

The Department of Land Affairs' responsibilities include deeds registration, surveys and mapping, cadastral surveys, spatial planning and land reform.

A project to upgrade townships surveyed under the apartheid government has made it possible for thousands of people to register properties as freehold, where previously they held lesser rights.

The Chief Directorate: Surveys and Mapping manages the national control survey network, which provides a unique, highly accurate positioning system across South Africa.

The 1:50 000 topographical map series is the largest scale map series, providing full coverage of South Africa.

The popular large-scale 1:10 000 orthophoto map series provides coverage of predominantly built-up areas, areas of economic importance and areas experiencing rapid development.

The Chief Directorate: Deeds Registration aims to maintain a public register of land, as well as an efficient system of registration aimed at affording security of title to land and rights to land.

Land reform

The Department of Land Affairs aims to be a global leader in the creation and maintenance of an equitable and sustainable land dispensation that results in social and economic development for all South Africans.

The department's key focus is on providing enhanced land rights to all South Africans, with particular emphasis on previously disadvantaged individuals, that will result in increased income levels and job opportunities, productive land use and well-planned human settlements.

South Africa's land reform is premised on three programmes: land-tenure reform, redistribution and restitution.

While the Department of Land Affairs implements land-tenure reform and redistribution, the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR) implements the restitution programme.

The department has four branches, namely Land and Tenure Reform, Restitution, Land Planning and Information, and Financial Management and Corporate Services.

Land restitution

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994, as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 1913.

The commission is led by the Chief Land Claims Commissioner and has nine regional offices headed by regional land claims commissioners.

By the end of 2007/08, 74 747 claims had been settled, involving more than 1,4 million beneficiaries.

Mining and minerals policy is based on the principles of the Freedom Charter, according to which the mineral wealth beneath the soil will be transferred to the ownership of the people as a whole.

MINERALS AND MINING

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of black people in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources. The MPRDA, 2002 enshrines equal access to mineral resources, irrespective of race, gender and creed.

The Department of Minerals and Energy has received more than 18 000 applications for prospecting, exploration and mining since 2004, resulting in the development of many new projects.

Some of the country's most important minerals are:

- gold – the unique Witwatersrand Basin yields some 96% of South Africa's gold output
- diamonds – the country is among the world's top producers
- titanium – heavy mineral-sand occurrences containing titanium minerals are found along the coasts
- manganese – enormous reserves of manganese are found in the sedimentary rocks of the Transvaal Super Group
- platinum-group metals (PGMs), chrome and vanadium – more than half of the world's reserves occur in the Bushveld Complex in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West
- bituminous coal and anthracite – seam beds occur in the Karoo Basin, in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Free State and the Eastern Cape
- copper phosphate, titanium, iron, vermiculite and zirconium – are found in the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex in Limpopo.

Policy

The MPRDA, 2002 aims to:

- recognise that mineral resources are the common heritage of all South Africans
- promote the beneficiation of minerals
- guarantee security of tenure for existing prospecting and mining operations
- ensure that historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs) participate more meaningfully
- promote junior and small-scale mining.

South Africa's mineral reserves, 2007				
Commodity	**Unit**	**Reserves**	**%**	**World ranking**
Alumino-silicates	Kt	51	n/a	n/a
Antimony	t	200	4,7	4
Chrome ore	Mt	5 500	72,4	1
Coal	Mt	27 981	6,1	8
Copper	Kt	13 000	1,4	14
Fluorspar	Mt	80	16,7	2
Gold	t	36 000	40,1	1
Iron ore	Mt	1 500	0,9	9
Lead	Kt	3 000	2,1	6
Manganese ore	Mt	4 000	80	1
Phosphate rock	Mt	2 500	5,0	4
Platinum-group metals	Kg	70 000	87,7	1
Silver	t	n/a	n/a	n/a
Titanium minerals	Mt	244	16,9	2
Uranium	Kt	341	7,2	5
Vanadium	Kt	12 000	32,0	1
Vermiculite	Kt	80 000	40,0	2
Zinc metal	Kt	15 000	3,3	8
Zirconium	Kt	14 000	19,4	2
Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram				

Source: Department of Minerals and Energy

In terms of the Act, new-order rights may be registered, transferred and traded, while existing operators are guaranteed security of tenure. Mining rights are valid for a maximum of 30 years and renewable for another 30 years, while prospecting rights are valid for up to five years and renewable for another three.

An empowerment charter for the industry, which is supported by mining houses and labour, targets:

- 15% ownership of mines by HDIs within five years
- HDIs holding 40% of junior and senior management positions within five years
- 26% HDI shareholding within 10 years
- 10% participation by women within five years.

Government is committed to helping junior and small-scale miners upgrade their operations into economically viable units. The first step is to legalise these mines.

The South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber was launched in July 2005 in Kimberley in the Northern Cape.

Reserves

South Africa's reserves of the following commodities are the highest in the world:

- manganese
- chromium
- PGMs
- gold
- vanadium
- alumino-silicates.

Gold

South Africa's gold production decreased by 7,2% from 272,1 t in 2006 to 252,6 t in 2007, largely as a result of the mining of lower-grade ore, made economic by higher rand gold prices, as well as new safety procedures. Gold's total sales revenue increased by 1,6% to R38 billion, due to a 19,7% rise in the average Rand price for the year, despite lower sales volumes.

South Africa's mineral production, 2007				
Commodity	**Unit**	**Production**	**%**	**World ranking**
Aluminium	Kt	914	2,4	9
Alumino-silicates	Kt	265	59,0	1
Antimony	t	3 354	2,5	7
Chrome ore	Kt	9 683	n/a	n/a
Coal	Mt	247,8	4,5	5
Copper	Kt	110	0,7	16
Fluorspar	Kt	285	6,0	4
Gold	t	253	10,3	2
Iron ore	Mt	41,3	2,5	7
Lead	Mt	42,0	1,2	11
Manganese ore	Kt	5 589	14,2	2
Nickel	Kt	42,0	3,1	9
Phosphate rock	Kt	2 556	1,7	10
Platinum-group metals	Kg	304 031	56,7	1
Silver	t	70	0,3	21
Titanium minerals	Kt	1 181	19,5	2
Uranium	t	639	1,6	11
Vanadium	Kt	23,5	40	1
Vermiculite	Kt	200	38,5	1
Zinc metal	Kt	31,4	0,3	25
Zirconium minerals	Kt	405	41,6	2
Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram				

Source: Department of Minerals and Energy

Silver

South Africa's silver mine production in 2007, at 69,8 t, was 19,7% lower than the 2006 figure of 86,9 t. Silver was produced as a by-product of the gold, lead-zinc, copper and PGM mines. Local sales value decreased from R11,0 million to R10,9 million due to the higher price, despite lower sales volumes. The export sales value decreased from R239,6 million to R224,1 million.

Coal

In 2007, South African mines produced 247,7 million tons (mt) of coal. Of this, 182,8 mt were sold locally for R19,7 billion, and 67,7 mt realised R24,4 billion on export markets. South Africa has estimated recoverable coal resources of 31 billion tons.

Coal meets about 88% of South Africa's primary energy needs. Eskom announced its intention to begin diversifying its primary energy mix (using less coal) five years ago. It is building open-cycle gas turbines at Atlantis and Mossel Bay, of which 1 024 megawatt (MW) was commissioned in 2007 in record time. In addition, Eskom plans to build a 100-MW wind facility in the near future, pending licensing approvals. Feasibility studies continue regarding other renewable-energy and gas-plant initiatives.

Many of the coal deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, some 28% of South Africa's production is exported internationally, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal-exporter in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries ranging from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

Operating collieries have been decreasing. Of these, a relatively small number of large-scale producers supply coal primarily to electricity and synthetic fuel producers. About 46,5% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 53,5% is produced by opencast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies, namely Anglo Coal, BHP Billiton, Sasol Mining, Exxaro

The South African Diamonds and Precious Metals Regulator was launched in March 2008. It promotes beneficiation and equitable access to diamonds and precious metals. It ensures that all industry players are compliant with the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme.

Through administering licences and export approvals, the regulator strives to ensure that local demand for diamonds and precious metals is catered for, and that growth in the local beneficiation of precious metals actually happens.

While the South African Diamond Board had an essentially regulatory role, the new regulator also has a beneficiation promotion role. The regulator intends to be more interactive with aspiring beneficiaries, and to mentor and ensure growth in this sector. Outreach programmes and pilot projects are in the pipeline.

Coal, Kumba Coal and Xstrata Coal accounting for 90% of the saleable coal production. The eight largest mines account for 61% of the output.

Platinum-group metals

South African PGM production dropped by 1,7%, to 304 t in 2007 from 309,3 t in 2006. Production of platinum and palladium decreased by 5,3% to 160,9 t and by 3% to 83,6 t respectively, while the production of rhodium rose by 7,2% to 21,1 t. PGM export sales revenue increased by 23,1% to R66 billion, due to a higher average rand basket price for 2007, despite lower sales volumes.

Non-ferrous minerals

In 2007, sales in this sector totalled R19 billion, representing 8,5% of total mineral sales. Local sales made up 40,8% of total non-ferrous mineral sales.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is an important source of ferrous minerals, being the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and

manganese ores and a significant supplier of manganese alloys, ferrosilicon and silicon metal.

International crude and stainless-steel manufacturing industries, which consume over 90% of ferrous mineral production, drive the demand of these minerals. The recent tightness in raw material supply/demand has pushed ferrous mineral prices to record levels. As a result, revenues generated from mineral sales increased by 40% to R49,8 billion in 2007, when compared to 2006, despite the 4% weakening of the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

Around R38 billion of sales revenues were derived from exports, which consist of less than 1% of primary minerals, mainly iron ores.

Industrial minerals

This sector comprises a wide variety of generally non-metallic minerals, with local sales accounting for some 88% of total revenue from industrial minerals in 2007. Local sales increased by R900 million from R6,9 billion to R7,8 billion in 2007.

The greatest contributor to the local sales value was sand and aggregate (43%), with limestone and lime (21,8%) being the second-biggest contributor. Fluorspar (28,7%), andalusite (26,4%), vermiculite (18,3%) and granite (14,9%) were significant contributors to the value of exports.

Processed minerals

Ferro-alloys and aluminum are the greatest revenue earners in this sector, contributing 78% of the R54,76 billion sales in 2007.

In rand terms, processed mineral sales were 21% greater than in 2006. Exports yielded 76% of the total sales of processed minerals.

Other minerals

This sector is dominated by diamonds, with support from hydrocarbon fuel, uranium oxide and silver.

The industry

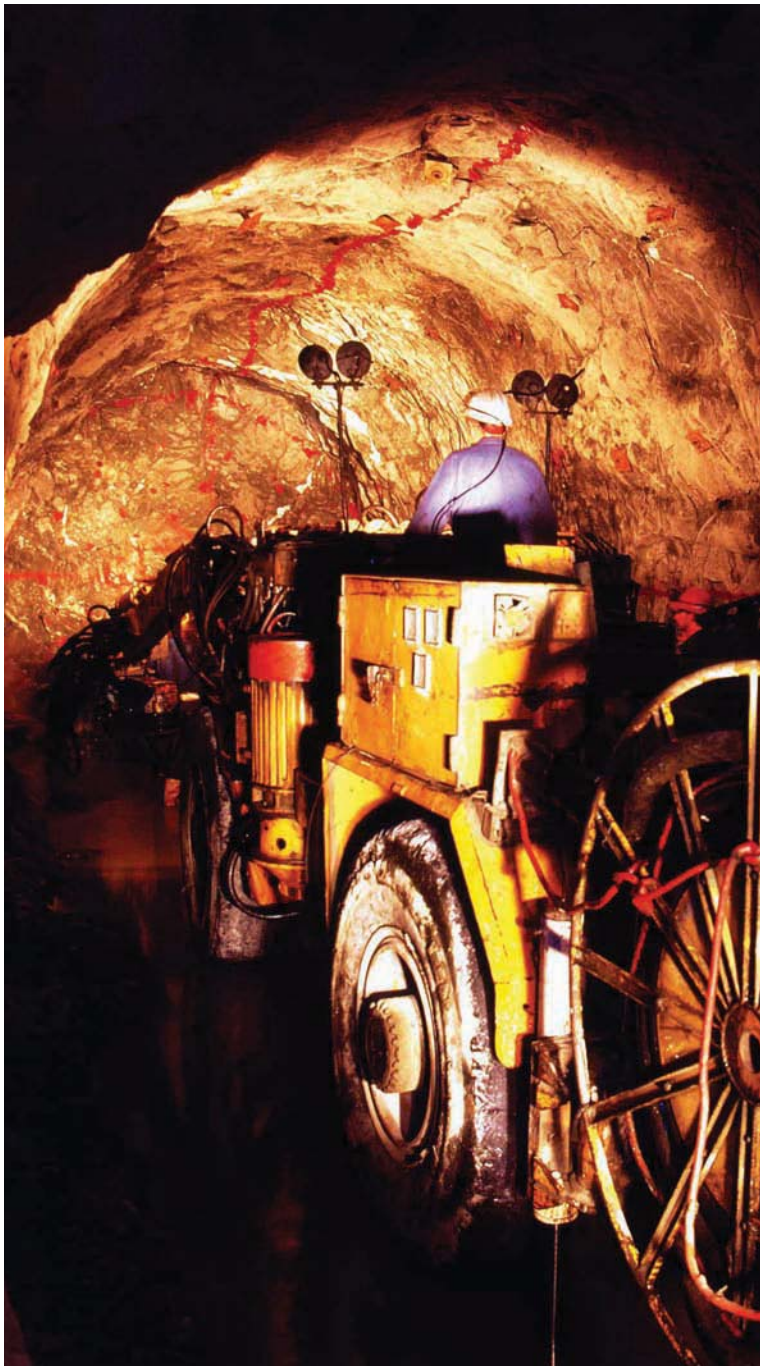
The commodities boom of 2005 continued into 2006, and preliminary figures for 2006 indicated that mineral sales grew by 36,7% to R195,2 billion and those of processed minerals grew at a moderate 14,5%. Unlike in other mining countries, this strong growth in mineral sales was initially not matched by any meaningful fixed capital investment. A marked improvement has been noted in this area.

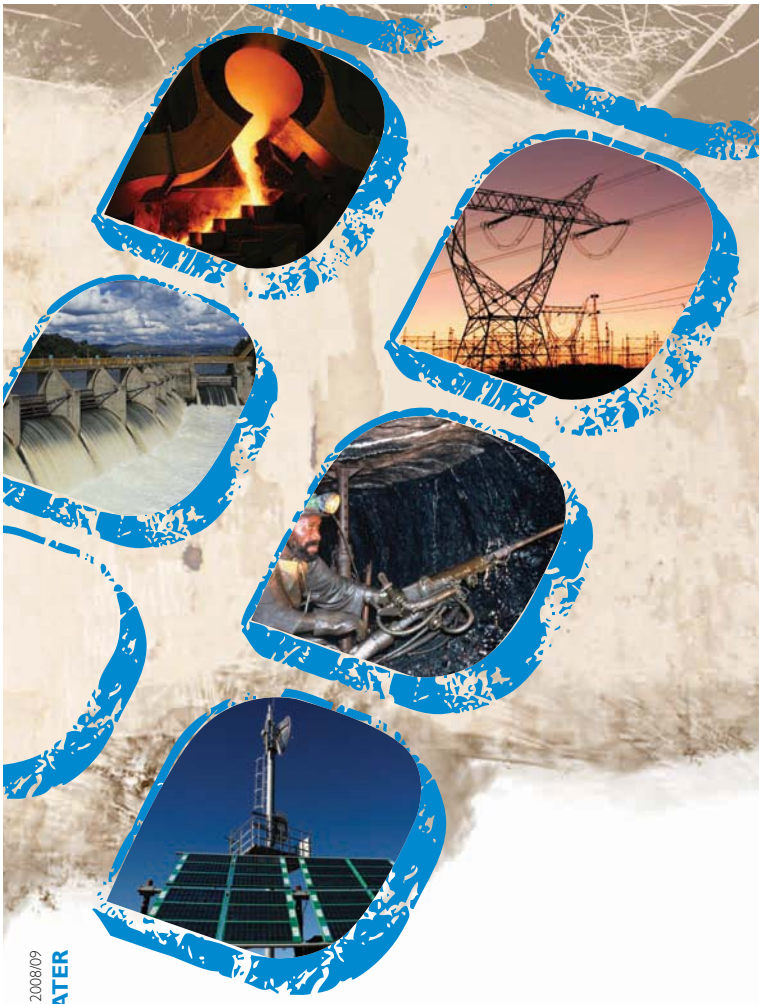
With the implementation of the MPRDA, 2002 and the Mining Charter, there is an increase in the number of women participating in the mining industry.

The most significant transactions approved recently saw the creation of black-owned companies. Anglo Platinum sold a majority stake in the Lebowa Platinum Mines to Anooraq, the third-largest producer of platinum in South Africa. Furthermore, Anglo Platinum sold its 22% shareholding in Northam to Mvelaphanda Resources, making Northam a black-owned and -controlled mine. Anglo Platinum also sold 50% of its stake in the De Brochen Project to Mvelaphanda, making this project 100% black-controlled.

In relation to coal, Anglo Operations through Anglo Coal, facilitated the creation of a new coal company, Ango Inyosi Coal, wherein HDIs own 26% of its equity. Kgalagadi Manganese is 80% owned by an empowerment company.

A number of community projects have been approved, wherein communities are holders of mining rights. Some examples of these are: Itereleng Bakgatia Resources, Marual Platinum and Lesizwe Platinum.





Putting clean and affordable water and energy within everyone's reach is a key national goal. At the same time, planning ensures that these key drivers of economic growth are delivered reliably and cost-effectively to industry, commerce and agriculture.

ENERGY AND WATER

The Department of Minerals and Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- attaining universal access to energy by 2012
- ensuring accessible, affordable and reliable energy, especially for the poor
- diversifying primary energy sources and reducing dependency on coal
- practising good governance, which must also facilitate and encourage private-sector investments in the energy sector
- providing environmentally responsible energy.

Estimates suggest that R107 billion is needed to meet the country's growing energy needs. Eskom will invest R150 billion over the next five years. Some R23 billion is reserved for independent power-producer entrants.

The refurbishment of three power stations – Camden in Ermelo, Grootvlei in Balfour and Komati in Middelburg, in Mpumalanga – will add 3 800 megawatt (MW) to the system.

The Energy Security Strategy seeks to:

- secure adequate supplies of affordable energy for continued economic growth and development in the short term
- enable policy- and decision-makers to make informed decisions on these complex interdependent energy outcomes in the medium term
- ensure that strategic planning and subsequent growth and development are sustainable in the long term.

Phase one of the strategy focuses on liquid-fuels' issues, an energy security framework and the proposed energy-planning approach. Phase two will address electricity-related issues.

Key elements of the policy include:

- Implementing an integrated energy modelling and planning approach to ensure co-ordination and enhanced integration of planning in dealing with future energy policy in support of achieving energy security.
- Improving Transnet Freight Services' operational efficiencies in servicing the liquid-fuels sector, by focusing on routes that allow for block trains/loads, and allocating additional capacity to the Durban-Gauteng Corridor.

- Improving operational efficiencies at ports, especially during periods of increased demand for imported crude oil or refined products in South Africa. This includes ensuring that back-of-port facilities are not used as part of refining operations.
- Promoting local refining as far as possible, with a particular preference for production from local resources, including those from South Africa's neighbouring states.
- Developing Transnet Pipelines' new multiproducts pipeline between Durban and Gauteng, which is necessary to alleviate the identified capacity constraints in the petroleum supply chain by 2010.
- Promoting energy efficiency and other demand-side initiatives in all sectors of the economy. This should be complemented by measures aimed at effectively managing interaction with the natural environment.

Energy in South Africa

Energy comprises about 15% of South Africa's gross domestic product, creating employment for about 250 000 people. Eskom's total electricity sales grew to 218 120 gigawatt/hour by March 2007. High liquid-fuel sales' figures demonstrate the growth of the South African economy and the importance of energy as a key driver of the country's economy, especially the large-scale energy-intensive primary mineral beneficiation and mining industries that dominate the economy.

This energy intensity is above average, with only 10 other countries having higher commercial primary energy intensities.

Power sources

Coal

About 46,5% of South African coal mining is conducted underground and about 53,5% is produced by opencast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies, namely Anglo Coal, BHP Billiton, Sasol Mining, Exxaro Coal, Kumba Coal and Xstrata Coal accounting for 90% of the saleable coal production. The eight largest mines account for 61% of the output.

South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 million tons (mt) of coal discards being produced annually.

Nuclear

Cabinet approved the Nuclear Energy Policy for South Africa in June 2008. The policy aims to increase the role of nuclear energy as part of the process of diversifying South Africa's primary energy sources to ensure energy security. The policy will ensure reducing the over-reliance on coal.

Eskom is investing up to 20 000 MW on new nuclear capacity by 2025.

Eskom's Koeberg Nuclear Power Station's two reactors outside Cape Town supply 1 800 MW to the national grid when both operate at full power, thus providing about 6,5% of South Africa's electricity.

The National Nuclear Regulator is the prime safety regulator and is responsible for protecting persons, property and the environment against nuclear damage by establishing safety standards and regulatory practices. It exercises safety-related regulatory control over the siting, design, construction and operation of nuclear installations and other actions.

The Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) undertakes and promotes research and development in the field of nuclear energy, radiation sciences and technology, medical isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities' management, waste management and decommissioning. It is a public entity reporting to the Minister of Minerals and Energy.

Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries.

The research reactor at Pelindaba, Safari-1, is the most commercialised reactor of its kind in the world with International Organisation for Standardisation 9001-accreditation. It earns South Africa foreign revenue worth millions of rands.

Pebble Bed Modular Reactor (Pty) Limited (PBMR) was established in 1999 with the intention to develop and market small-scale, high-temperature reactors both locally and internationally. The PBMR project team is based in Centurion, Pretoria.

The PBMR is a high temperature reactor (HTR) with a closed-cycle gas turbine power conversion system. Although it is not the only HTR currently being developed in the world, the South African project is on schedule to be the first commercial-scale HTR in the power-generation field.

The PBMR comprises a steel pressure vessel, which holds the enriched uranium dioxide fuel encapsulated in graphite spheres. The system is cooled with helium and heat is converted into electricity through a turbine.

From a small research and development company with about 100 employees at its inception in 1999, PBMR has grown into one of the largest nuclear reactor design teams in the world. In addition, more than 1 000 people at universities, private companies and research institutes are involved with the project.

PBMR is preparing for a project at Koeberg near Cape Town, where Africa's only nuclear power station is based, and a fuel plant at Pelindaba near Pretoria, where the pebble fuel will be manufactured.

Liquid fuels

The South African Petroleum Industry Association announced strong growth in petroleum product sales in the first quarter of 2007.

Aggregate sales of major petroleum products showed a strong increase of 7,3% in the first quarter of 2007, compared with the first quarter of 2006. The most significant increases were in diesel (13,1%), bitumen (36,3%) and liquid petroleum gas (LPG) (15%).

Petrol sales grew by 4,4% and jet fuel sales by 4,6%. Sales of paraffin, a source of household energy, dropped by 13,4%.

In the first quarter, the percentage split of petrol sales between unleaded petrol (ULP) and lead-replacement petrol (LRP) was 64% and 36% respectively. This represented a significant increase in the penetration of ULP from the level of 43% that prevailed in May 2006 and indicated lower demand for LRP.

ENERGY AND WATER

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to certain international petrol markets in United States dollar. This means that supply and demand for petroleum products in the international markets, combined with the Rand-Dollar exchange rate, influence the domestic price.

The National Petroleum Gas and Oil Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA) is responsible for exploring and exploiting oil and natural gas, as well as producing and marketing synthetic fuels produced from offshore gas at the world's largest commercial gas-to-liquids plant in Mossel Bay, about 400 km east of Cape Town.

Sasol

The Sasol group of companies comprises diversified fuel, chemical and related manufacturing and marketing operations, complemented by interests in technology development, oil and gas exploration, and production.

Its principal feedstocks are obtained from coal, which the company converts into value-added hydrocarbons through Fischer-Tropsch-process technologies.

In 2008, out of R1,4 billion allocated for household electrification, a further R380 million was set aside for the building of 10 substations, with primary emphasis on the provinces with the least development, namely Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

In 2008/09, the Department of Minerals and Energy planned to electrify 150 000 households, 2 500 schools and improved the quality of electricity supply in preparation for 2010 and beyond. The department has eradicated the backlog of electrification of clinics and aims to achieve universal access to schools by the end of the 2009/10 financial year.

Out of 2008's electrification expenditure of R1,4 billion, R894 million was allocated for empowerment initiatives. Of this amount, 52% was allocated to Black Economic Empowerment companies. In 2007, a total of 5 594 jobs (479 women, 146 disabled and 3 661 youth) were created through the Integrated National Electrification Programme.

Oil and gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves and imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola) meet about 95% of South Africa's crude oil requirements.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by:

- refining crude oil (oil refineries)
- converting coal to liquid fuels and gas to liquid fuels (Sasol)
- turning natural gas into liquid fuels (PetroSA).

Another major role-player in South Africa's liquid fuels industry is the Central Energy Fund (CEF). Its mandate is to engage in acquiring, exploring, generating, manufacturing, marketing and distributing any energy form, especially oil and gas. It also engages in research relating to the energy sector. The CEF's diversified portfolio of activities is housed in the following active subsidiaries:

- The Strategic Fuel Fund Association, which was established to procure and store crude oil and manage strategic crude oil stocks for South Africa. It trades and leases spare storage ullage and is involved in oil-pollution control.
- PetroSA, which owns and operates the gas-to-liquids plant at Mossel Bay. PetroSA is also involved in oil and gas exploration and production, and its offshore production platform supplies gas and condensates by gas pipeline to its onshore plant for conversion into a range of environmentally friendly transportation fuels and associated products for the domestic and international markets.
- The Petroleum Agency South Africa, which promotes and markets exploration in South African territory (both offshore and onshore for oil and gas), negotiates and monitors concessions and licences on behalf of government, and is the custodian of geological and geophysical data.
- iGas, which is a state-owned entity for the development of gas infrastructure in South Africa. iGas partnered Sasol and ENH

of Mozambique in establishing the natural gas pipeline from Mozambique to South Africa.

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of government controls. Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets. Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while providing a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

The refiners and wholesale marketers move products from the refineries by coastal barge, rail, truck and pipeline to roughly 200 depots. From these, about 4 600 service stations and 100 000 direct consumers (mostly farmers) are served.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is used by consumers and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or is exported to neighbouring countries.

Limited natural gas reserves exist around the South African coast. PetroSA exploits the reserves off the coast of Mossel Bay, where the gas is converted at the Mossgas plant into liquid fuels.

Although gas usage has increased in recent years, the importance of gas in the South African energy economy is still small compared to other countries. Industry remains the largest customer.

Electricity

Eskom generates about 95% of electricity in South Africa and about 45% in Africa. About 88% of South Africa's electricity is generated in coal-fired power stations. Koeberg, a large nuclear station near Cape Town, provides about 6,5% of capacity. A further 2,3% is provided by hydroelectric and pumped storage schemes.

South Africa supplies two thirds of Africa's electricity and is one of the cheapest electricity producers in the world.

In South Africa there are few, if any, new hydro sites that could be developed to deliver significant amounts of power, owing to water scarcity.

South African state-owned electricity company Eskom awarded Alstom and Hitachi Power Africa contracts worth more than R31 billion to equip a new 4 740-megawatt coal-fired power station – dubbed "Project Bravo" – to be built in the Witbank area of Mpumalanga.

French company Alstom has secured an estimated R13-billion contract to supply turbines and related infrastructure, while Hitachi Power Africa – a venture between Germany-based Hitachi Power Europe and South African empowerment partners – has won an R18,5-billion contract to provide boilers for the new power station.

Energy and the environment

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of greenhouse gases (GHGs) in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a co-ordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Minerals and Energy is expected to respond to and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a Non-Annex1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emissions' intensity and emissions per capita.

South Africa must therefore proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Minerals and Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the Clean Development Mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

ENERGY AND WATER

Eskom has signed an agreement with French development agency *Agence Française de Développement* for a R100-million loan over 20 years to help finance a new wind-farm project. The 100-megawatt wind farm will be built on the West Coast near the town of Koekenaap, east of Vredendal in the Western Cape and will be operational in early 2010.

The two companies concluded the deal in March 2008 during an official visit to South Africa by French President Nicolas Sarkozy.

Water

South Africa is largely a semi-arid, water-stressed country. The country's average rainfall of about 450 mm a year is well below the world average of about 860 mm a year. To overcome the problem of variable river flows, many large storage dams have been built.

The available water supply is reduced by evaporation from dams, and by commercial afforestation and sugar-cane farming.

The total net abstraction of water from surface-water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m^3 a year for the whole country, after allowing for the re-use of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49,2 billion m^3 per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Major dams in South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10 m^3)	River
Gariep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongola

Source: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

By 2008, about a million more people had access to both water and basic sanitation services, contributing to government's achievement of meeting the millennium development goals' target of halving the population of people without water and sanitation.

Households with access to water increased from 59% to 88% and basic sanitation from 48% to 73%. From 1994 to June 2008, the Department of Minerals and Energy served 18,7 million people with water and 10,9 million people with access to basic sanitation.

Water policy

The first edition of the National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS) was approved in September 2004. The NWRS describes how South Africa's water resources will be protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in accordance with the requirements of the National Water Policy, 1997 and the National Water Act, 1998. These documents are based on government's vision of a transformed South African society in which every person has the opportunity to participate in productive economic activity and lead a dignified and healthy life.

The right to education is enshrined in South Africa's Bill of Rights, not only for children but also for adults.

EDUCATION

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training (GET), Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education (HE) structures.

South Africa has a single national education system, which is organised and managed by the national Department of Education and the nine provincial departments.

Statutory bodies include the Council of Education Ministers, Heads of the Education Department's Committee, General and FET Quality Assurance Council, South African Qualifications Authority, Council on HE, South African Council for Educators, National Board for FET, Education Labour Relations Council and the National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS).

Quality Improvement, Development, Support and Upliftment Programme (QIDS-UP)

QIDS-UP is a five-year special intervention programme that prioritises 15 000 primary schools serving the poorest communities. The focus of the programme is to improve school infrastructure, supply curriculum resources and teacher and school management support towards improving learning outcomes. The programme also seeks to address the impact of poverty in schools.

Greater emphasis is placed on improving school infrastructure.

In 2008/09, 1 000 schools in seven provinces were improved (renovations, water and fencing) at a cost of R76,5 million. During 2008, 11 000 schools received reading books, including reading books in indigenous languages for 2 200 schools.

A manual on school self-evaluation and improvement to support school managers was delivered to schools in October 2008.

The National Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking System will track the movement of learners from Grade R to Grade 12 between schools and provinces. When a learner is registered on the system, he/she is assigned a unique national learner tracking number that will remain with the learner throughout his/her schooling career. By May 2008, the system had been implemented incrementally in ordinary and special schools and will be fully operational in all provinces and schools by March 2010.

By September 2008, 58% of public ordinary schools were declared as no-fee schools, benefitting more than five million learners in 14 264 schools.

Policy

Schooling is compulsory between the ages of seven and 15. All learners are guaranteed access to quality learning. There are two types of schools: independent (private) and public.

At public schools, parents vote on the level of school fees. Poor parents are given exemption or reductions.

Learners

By mid-2007, the South African public education system had 12,3 million learners, 387 000 educators and about 26 592 schools, including 400 special-needs schools and 1 000 registered private schools. Of all schools, 6 000 were secondary schools (grades 8 to 12) and the rest were primary (grades 1 to 7) schools.

Learners attend school for 13 years. The first year of education, Grade R or reception year, and the last three years are not compulsory. Many primary schools offer Grade R, which can also be completed at nursery school.

In 2008, Grade 12 learners wrote the first National Senior Certificate based on the new National Curriculum Statement (NCS). A number of 589 912 learners enrolled for the NCS examinations. The pass rate was 62,5%.

Curriculum development

The NCS aims to develop the full potential of all learners as citizens of a democratic South Africa.

It seeks to create a lifelong learner who is confident and independent; literate, numerate and multiskilled; and compassionate, with a respect for the environment and the ability to participate in society as a critical and active citizen.

The NCS is available in all 11 official languages and in Braille, in keeping with the Constitution, which grants parity of esteem to all languages.

It requires learners in grades 10 to 12 to do four compulsory subjects, namely two official languages, Mathematical Literacy or Mathematics and Life Orientation. In addition, learners must select three approved subjects.

The NCS has been implemented incrementally.

Further Education and Training

South Africa has 50 multisite-campus FET colleges.

Each new college operates under a single governing council appointed to oversee effective and accountable management across and within the various FET college campuses and sites.

The recorded increase in student intake, the development of new programmes and increased participation in learnerships bear testimony to the potential for growth in this sector.

The FET College Financial Aid Scheme has commenced for students at Level 2 of the National Certificate (Vocational) and was extended to students on levels 3 and 4 in 2008 and 2009 respectively. These bursaries are administered by the NSFAS on behalf of the Department of Education.

The third and final year of recapitalisation of the FET colleges began in April 2008. Detailed plans from all 50 FET colleges for the expenditure of R795 million on infrastructure, equipment and human resources have been submitted and approved by Cabinet.

Some R397,5 million was transferred to colleges in May 2008.

FET provides learning and training from National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels 2 to 4, or the equivalent of grades 10 to 12 in the school system, and a FET Certificate (FETC) in General Vocational and in Trade Occupational, on NQF levels 2 to 4 in FET colleges. The FETC replaced the existing Senior Certificate in 2008.

Educators are required to register with the South African Council of Educators (SACE) before they are employed by any authority. The SACE has a register of about 500 000 educators, of whom 22 000 are registered provisionally.

Higher Education transformation

According to a strategic plan for HE, enrolment at HE institutions will rise from 15% to 20% of school leavers within 15 years.

Within five years, enrolments in the humanities will decline, while those in business and commerce, and science, engineering and technology (SET) will rise.

In 2008/09, the Department of Education's budget totalled R18,5 billion, of which R15,1 billion was transferred to HE institutions as block grants or earmarked funds (for the NSFAS, foundation programmes, infrastructure, or efficiency allocations).

The National Plan for HE seeks to expand enrolment by setting a target of a 20% participation rate by 2015.

It proposed a shift in the balance of enrolments to a ratio of 40%: 30%: 30% in the humanities: business and commerce: SET, respectively, over the period 2001 to 2010.

The HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- University of Stellenbosch
- Rhodes University
- University of the Western Cape (which incorporated the Dental Faculty of Stellenbosch University)
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State (which incorporated the QwaQwa Campus of the University of the North and the Bloemfontein Campus of Vista)

By May 2008, seven million learners in 18 039 schools had access to the National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) and there were 6 390 food gardens in schools.

A total of 18 305 monitoring visits were made to schools by province and district officials. Some 1 630 community-based service-providers were providing food supplies to schools. About 26 408 food handlers were working on the programme and receiving an honorarium ranging between R300 and R500 per month. In 2007/08, the NSNP was allocated a budget of R1,152 billion, of which 100% was spent by 31 March 2008.

- North West University (which incorporated the Potchefstroom University for Christian HE and Vista Sebokeng Campus)
- University of Pretoria (which retained its name after incorporating the Mamelodi Campus of Vista University)
- University of South Africa (which retained its name after merging with the Vista University Distance Education Campus and Technikon SA)
- Tshwane University of Technology (from the merger of the Pretoria, North West and Northern Gauteng technikons)
- Durban Institute of Technology (from the merger of Natal Technikon and Technikon ML Sultan)
- Central University of Technology (formerly Technikon Free State)
- Mangosuthu Technikon
- University of Johannesburg (from the merger of the Rand Afrikaans University with Technikon Witwatersrand, which incorporated the Soweto and East Rand campuses of Vista University)
- University of Limpopo (from the merger of the Medical University of South Africa and the University of the North)

The Kha Ri Gude (meaning "let us learn") mass literacy campaign was officially launched in February 2008. Government will spend R6,1 billion over five years to enable 4,7 million South Africans to achieve literacy by 2010.

The campaign is aimed at reducing adult illiteracy by:

- mobilising potential learners, educators and other support personnel to participate in the campaign
- developing learner and educator-support material
- setting up relevant systems at national, provincial and district level to facilitate national implementation of the campaign
- establishing and maintaining a database of 4,7 million learners and 40 000 educators over the campaign period.

By August 2008, progress included the:

- enrolment of 360 000 learners
- recruitment and training of volunteer educators, 2 800 supervisors and 150 co-ordinators.

In the same month, blind unemployed matriculants were trained to teach basic Braille literacy to the visually impaired.

- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (from the merger of the University of Port Elizabeth, Port Elizabeth Technikon and Port Elizabeth Campus of Vista)
- University of Fort Hare (which incorporated the East London Campus of Rhodes University)
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology (from the merger of the Cape Technikon and Peninsula Technikon)
- Vaal University of Technology (formerly Vaal Triangle Technicon)
- Walter Sisulu University for Technology and Science (from the merger of the University of Transkei, Border Technikon and Eastern Cape Technikon)
- National Institute for HE, Northern Cape
- National Institute for HE, Mpumalanga.

The Dinaledi schools are mainly located in historically disadvantaged communities. The Dinaledi initiative is part of the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition and focus on Mathematics and Science.

In 2008, 300 Mathematics and Science textbooks were delivered to 488 Dinaledi schools. The number of Dinaledi schools was increased to 500 as part of government's effort to double the number of Grade 12 Mathematics passes to 50 000 by 2009.

South Africa's science and research are world-class.

The Department of Science and Technology seeks to realise the full potential of science and technology (S&T) in social and economic development, through the development of human resources (HR), research and innovation.

The department primarily focuses on implementing the National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), which provides for an integrated approach to HR development, knowledge generation, investment in infrastructure and improving the strategic management of the public S&T system.

Expenditure is expected to continue to increase rapidly, to R4,1 billion in 2009/10, representing an average annual increase of 20%. Most of this expenditure comprises transfers to public entities for S&T initiatives.

Strategies and programmes

According the Research and Development (R&D) Strategy, 1% of gross domestic product would be invested by both public and private sectors by 2008/09. By May 2008, the country's national spending on R&D totalled 0,9% and government was well on its way to achieve its target.

The department continues to develop strategies in new areas of knowledge and technology. Strategies for indigenous knowledge, nanotechnology, astronomy and intellectual property, derived from publicly funded research, have been developed.

The innovation towards a knowledge-based economy plan aims to drive South Africa's transformation towards a knowledge-based economy in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

To this extent, success will be measured by the degree to which S&T plays a driving role in enhancing productivity, economic growth and socio-economic development.

The plan addresses an array of social, economic, political, environmental, scientific and technological benefits and is designed to stimulate multidisciplinary thinking and challenge South Africa's researchers to answer existing questions, create new disciplines and develop new technologies.

Biotechnology innovation centres (Brics)

The National Biotechnology Strategy (NBS), which was launched in 2001, sets the agenda for the development of South Africa's biotechnology industry.

Initiatives include establishing Brics, such as BioPAD, Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre. Brics were created to act as instruments for the implementation of the NBS.

The Brics' focus areas cover a wide spectrum of the subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bio-informatics and plant biotechnology. One of the challenges facing the South African biotechnology sector is the public's lack of understanding and knowledge of biotechnology applications and benefits.

A programme initiated as a result of this challenge is the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme, which provides the South African public with factual information, enabling members of the public to participate meaningfully in debates about biotechnology and make informed decisions.

Astronomy

Through the Astronomy Geographical Advantage Programme, South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment in space science to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

A key result was the launch of the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape. Salt is a multimillion rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America, New Zealand and the United Kingdom. Salt is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

South Africa has been shortlisted, along with Australia, as one of the sites for the world-class radio telescope, the Square Kilometre Array. A final decision in this regard is expected in 2011.

In January 2009, President Kgalema Motlanthe signed the South African National Space Agency Bill. The agency will promote the peaceful use of outer space; foster research in astronomy, Earth observation, communications, navigation and space physics; foster international co-operation in space-related activities; and advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies through human-capital development and outreach programmes.

The agency must facilitate the development of space missions, develop technology platforms and acquire, assimilate and disseminate space satellite data for any organ of state. It will also implement the National Space Strategy, which was approved by Cabinet in December 2008, to stimulate the capability to place South Africa among the leading nations in the innovative use of space S&T.

Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS)

The AMTS guides efforts in the manufacturing sector, including the aerospace industry. It strives to:

- develop technology platforms that increase current and create new competitive advantages
- establish partnerships and human-capital development.

In October 2008, the Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, unveiled a world-class, locally developed electric car in Paris, France. Appropriately named Joule, the ultra sleek zero emission car made its global debut at the Paris motor show.

The car was named after British scientist, James Prescott Joule, one of the outstanding physicists of his day, best known for his research in electricity and thermodynamics.

Joule is a six-seater, multipurpose vehicle designed by Optimal Energy, in association with South African-born automotive designer, Keith Helfet. Optimal Energy was capitalised with a R50-million investment from the Innovation Fund (IF), an instrument of the Department of Science and Technology. Shareholders in Optimal Energy comprise executive management, the IF and the Industrial Development Corporation.

The aim is to enhance the knowledge base and the knowledge intensity of South Africa's manufacturing sector. In the Department of Science and Technology's Ten-Year Innovation Plan, the development of space S&T has been identified as one of the five priority areas.

The South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity is the custodian of the National Fish Collection of South Africa.

The Fish Collection Database consists of about 80 000 fish specimens (containing at least 650 000 individual fish specimens) from southern Africa and surrounding oceans, and from elsewhere in the world. It is the world's largest collection of southern African fish.

About 7 500 species in about 400 families are represented in the collection, depending on which classification is used.

Nanotechnology

South Africa's National Nanotechnology Strategy recognises the needs of local industry and focuses on the essential building blocks of nanoscience, namely synthesis, characterisation and fabrication.

The strategy is aimed at increasing the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. In 2007, National Treasury allocated R450 million to implement the strategy. Known as "the technology of the very small" (i.e. about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts, for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

In May 2008, the Department of Science and Technology, in partnership with the Government of France and the Sci-Bono Discovery Centre, held the La Lillette Nanotechnology Exhibition in Newtown, Johannesburg. It later moved to the Vuwani science centre in Limpopo.

The South African Government is offering generous tax incentives to encourage the private sector to invest in research and development (R&D) activities in the country, in terms of Section 11(d) of the Income Tax Act, 1962.

The incentives consist of a deduction of 150% in respect of expenditure on eligible scientific or technological R&D undertaken by enterprises or individuals within South Africa; and an accelerated depreciation of assets used for purposes of scientific and technological R&D over three years at the rate of 50:30:20, starting from the year of assessment in which the asset is brought into use.

These include, among other things, aerospace, manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

The South African industry and researchers have been key players in nanotechnology and the practical application of nanoscience for a number of years; for example, Sasol's chemical processing by catalysis.

Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS)

The Department of Science and Technology established the National Indigenous Knowledge Systems Office (Niko) to, among other things, increase public awareness, understanding, knowledge and appreciation of the IKS. Niko has created an appropriate platform through the Interdepartmental Committee on IKS to co-ordinate and promote the work of different departments.

In 2008, the Department of Science and Technology announced several initiatives to promote and protect IKS in the country.

These included the design of a degree in IKS being reviewed by the South African Qualifications Authority and the establish-

National Science Week is an annual week-long event aimed at encouraging the youth to pursue careers in science and technology, and highlighting the importance of science in everyday life.

ment of a pilot centre at the University of Zululand to be used for recording, codification and dissemination of IKS.

Also to be set up are research chairs on IKS, which would be based at Higher Education (HE) institutions in the country to help increase the human capital required to conduct research and develop appropriate skills in indigenous knowledge.

Supporting innovators

Technology for Human Resources for Industry Programme (Thrip)

The programme aims to increase participation by small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), Black Economic Empowerment entities, and black and female researchers and students, as well as to expand the share of the Thrip budget allocation to historically disadvantaged individuals and universities of technology.

Thrip supports, on average, 2 400 tertiary students each year.

Innovation Fund (IF)

The IF was created to promote technological innovation, increase networking and cross-sectoral collaboration, increase competitiveness, improve quality of life, ensure environmental sustainability and harness information technology (IT).

Tshumisano

The Tshumisano Technology Station Programme is advancing technology transfer and skills development to enhance equitable economic development. In this regard, the HE sector has a vital role in supporting SMMEs to become engines of growth. The Tshumisano Trust is collaborating with universities of technology in particular to promote the development of industries in manufacturing, chemicals and textiles, and is supporting innovation within SMMEs and student skills' development.

Technology stations include the:

- Tshwane University of Technology (TUT): Electronics and Electrical Engineering, complemented by IT
- Central University of Technology: Metals Value-Adding and Product Development

- TUT: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Mangosuthu Technikon: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Vaal University of Technology: Materials and Processing Technologies
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Automotive Components
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Downstream Chemicals
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Clothing and Textile
- University of Johannesburg: Metal-Casting Technology
- Durban Institute of Technology: Reinforced and Moulded Plastics
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Agrifood Processing Technologies.
- University of Limpopo: Limpopo Agrifood Technology Station.

It was estimated that in 2007/08, the trust assisted 570 SMMEs.

National research facilities

The National Research Foundation (NRF) manages South Africa's national research facilities. It promotes and supports basic and applied research. The NRF oversees the following national research facilities:

- South African Astronomical Observatory
- Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
- Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
- South African Environmental Observation Network
- National Zoological Gardens
- iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences (iThemba Labs).

Science councils

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR)

The CSIR is one of the largest scientific and technology, R&D and implementation organisations in Africa. The organisation undertakes and applies directed research and innovation in S&T to improve the quality of life of South Africans.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Collaborating with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation and reports to the Minister of Minerals and Energy. About 30% of the annual budget of R350 million is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of services and products, technology licensing agreements and joint-venture operating companies.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC conducts research that generates critical and independent knowledge, relative to all aspects of human and social development. Alleviating poverty and developing and implementing policy are central to its research activities.

The HSRC's research also extends beyond South Africa through projects and collaborations in other African countries.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC conducts research through six national programmes, and collaborates with most of the world's top health-research agencies to improve the nation's health status and quality of life.

The MRC disseminates research information through the National Health Knowledge Network. The council has established the African Biotechnology Information Centre in co-operation with various universities.

The MRC's National HIV and AIDS Lead Programme co-ordinates the South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is committed to promoting agriculture, and related sectors, through research and technology development and transfer.

In August 2008, the Department of Trade and Industry launched South Africa's first aerospace supplier village. Situated in Centurion, Pretoria, the village is expected to unlock the potential of South Africa's aerospace industry.

The primary objective of the Centurion Aerospace Village (CAV) is the development, construction and operation of an aerospace supplier park. In addition, the CAV addresses the upliftment of small and medium enterprises and black empowerment companies within the industry and repositions the aviation sector to ensure participation in the global aviation market.

Government's vision is that, by 2014, the South African aerospace industry should be sustainable, growing, empowered and internationally recognised.

The village will house a number of local industry companies, including Denel and Aerosud Holdings, as well as smaller companies in what will be a cluster-focused development.

Council of Geoscience (CGS)

The CGS supplies the country with geoscience data to establish a safe and cost-effective physical infrastructure.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS produces, maintains and disseminates standards. It promotes standardisation in business and government, and administers compulsory standards on behalf of the State. It also certifies international quality standards.

Other important research bodies and areas

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, continually assesses various malaria-control programmes.

The South African National Antarctic Programme manages three bases, one at Vesleskarvet, Antarctica; a second on Marion Island in the south Indian Ocean; and a third on Gough Island, a British territory in the South Atlantic Ocean.

South Africa is the only African country with a presence in Antarctica, and which is also conducting research there in

physics, engineering, Earth sciences, and biological and oceanographic sciences.

The South African base, Sanae IV, is one of the few country bases built on hard rock, as opposed to the ice shelf. The Department of Science and Technology has finalised the Antarctic Research Strategy for South Africa.

Mine-safety research

The Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee aims to advance mineworkers' safety. It has a permanent research-management office overseeing research in rock engineering, engineering and occupational health.

Energy research

The Chief Directorate: Energy of the Department of Minerals and Energy manages a policy-directed research programme.

This includes transport energy, renewable energy and energy for developing areas, coal, electricity, energy efficiency, energy economy and integrated energy-policy formulation.

Agricultural research

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and the private sector.

Water research

Water research in South Africa is co-ordinated and funded by the Water Research Commission in Pretoria.

The organisation's most active partners in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- non-governmental organisations.

Coastal and marine research

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine

ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and monitoring the marine environment.

Environmental research

The Chief Directorate: Environmental Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes focus on, among other things, waste management and pollution, nature conservation, river management, the coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.

Government aims to speed up the delivery of housing for the poor and have all South Africans accommodated in formally planned settlements by 2014.

Funding and delivery

By December 2008, government had built 2,7 million houses – providing shelter for 13 million people free of charge.

Comprehensive Housing Plan

Cabinet approved the Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements and has a framework for housing programmes, which aims to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It provides for comprehensive oversight by government in promoting the residential property market. This includes:

- developing low-cost housing
- providing medium-density accommodation and rental housing
- establishing stronger partnerships with the private sector
- providing social infrastructure and amenities.

The Comprehensive Housing Plan is being implemented through a pilot project in each province that will improve the living conditions of households in informal settlements. The informal-settlement upgrading projects provide for phased, area-based development, and fund community participation and project management as an integral part thereof. Eradicating or upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is the prime target.

Key focus areas identified by the Comprehensive Housing Plan include:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break barriers between the First-Economy residential property boom and the Second-Economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for developing sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The Breaking New Grounds (BNG) Programme is aimed at improving overall housing delivery.

A BNG house is a state subsidy house given to qualifying beneficiaries. BNG builds on existing housing policy articulated in the *White Paper on Housing* (1994), but shifts the strategic focus from simply ensuring the delivery of affordable housing to making sure that housing is delivered in settlements that are both sustainable and habitable.

Unlike the previous 20-34 square metre subsidy houses, the BNG house is 40 m^2 in size and has two bedrooms, a lounge, open-plan kitchen and fitted bathroom. The houses are also equipped with electricity. The BNG Programme is being implemented through the Informal Settlement-Upgrading Programme.

Rental housing for the poor

About 1,8 million South African households in the middle- to lower-income groups live in rented accommodation as opposed to about 5,2 million households that own property. According to the *Development Indicators, 2008*, there has been an improvement in the income of the poorest, rising from R783 in 1993 to R1 032 in 2007.

There is a dire need for public rental housing for the poor, which the Department of Housing aims to address by means of various options.

The department has formulated an affordable rental-housing programme for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- public-sector hostels provided for the purposes of housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock, which has not been transferred to households who inhabit these units and that will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock, which will be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Policy exists that will allow for the increased allocation of housing units to ex-combatants and for Truth and Reconciliation Commission reparations on a preferential basis. Over the next five years, an average of 30% of subsidised units is expected to be allocated to this target group.

Housing Development Agency

The Housing Development Agency Act, 2008 establishes the Housing Development Agency as a statutory body to ensure that the delivery of housing is facilitated. The Act provides for an agreement between the agency and a municipality where a council lacks the capacity to acquire, hold, develop and release land for residential or community development. Its main purpose is to address the:

- shortage of well-located land
- facilitation of the rapid development of sustainable human settlements
- supply of much-needed project-management capacity for government projects.

The agency will also assist in cutting red tape that prohibits the acquisition of suitable land, as well as in the approval of development both by government and the private sector.

The provincial housing departments will be responsible for assisting local authorities in developing their land-needs assessments and in co-ordinating individual municipal submissions into a provincial plan.

The agency is also expected to facilitate the rapid release of land, which is key to the implementation of the BNG Programme and will improve the efficient location of human settlements. The housing-delivery institutions Servcon and Thubelisha will be integrated into the agency.

Capacity-building

The Department of Housing has undertaken several initiatives to support small housing enterprises and promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

The N2 Gateway Project

The project entails the transformation of the informal settlements along the N2 outside Cape Town. This is the biggest housing project ever undertaken.

Government is piloting the integration of communities and different income groups, and auditing and updating the database of housing needs to ensure the list and choice of beneficiaries is credible, building human settlements with basic economic and social amenities and pursuing a new way of intergovernment relations.

The project will see the development of about 30 000 dignified dwellings at sites along a 30-km stretch of the N2, from District Six to Joe Slovo, Netreg, New Rest and Boys Town to Delft.

By May 2008:

- 4 500 temporary relocation units had been built
- 705 rental appartments were fully occupied at Joe Slovo
- First National Bank was developing an affordable bonded show village at Joe Slovo phase two and another 850 of these homes at Delft
- contractors had started with earthworks ahead of the construction of a Breaking New Ground (BNG) show village of 55 homes
- Delft was a hive of activity, with about 1 000 BNG homes already allocated to beneficiaries at Symphony, where the finishing touches were being applied to 1 400 new homes.

The National Home-Builders' Registration Council (NHBRC) was established in terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998. The council aims to protect the interests of housing consumers and to regulate the home-building industry. Government has established national institutions to facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role provincial governments and municipalities play. The Department of Housing's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions are the NHBRC, the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC), the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), Servcon Housing Solutions, Thubelisha

Homes, the Social Housing Foundation (SHF), the South African Housing Fund, the People's Housing Partnership Trust and the Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF).

Delivery partners

The revenue of the NHFC is derived from interest and service charges for its wholesale lending and financial services.

- The NHFC's mandate has been expanded to enable the institution to directly lend to low- and medium-income end users. A new business model for the corporation has been developed and approved for implementation.
  By September 2008, final steps regarding the transformation of the NHFC were being implemented in the context of a government-wide review of development finance institutions. The NHFC's offering of end-user finance for home ownership targets 8 000 loans in townships and "sterile" areas.
- In 2008/09, the Nurcha continued financing contractors in the subsidy housing, credit-linked housing and community infrastructure subsectors.
- Servcon Housing Solutions (Pty) Ltd is a private company established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973, as a product of the Record of Understanding between government (Department of Housing), the Banking Association of South Africa and participating financial institutions.
- Thubelisha Homes, a not-for-profit company, helps the owners of properties in possession or non-performing loans to relocate to more affordable homes. Thubelisha was appointed project manager and implementing agent of the N2 Gateway Project.
- Another not-for-profit company, the SHF, aims to build capacity for social-housing institutions. It is expected that the SHF will be consolidated under the new Social Housing Regulatory Authority, as envisaged by the new social Housing Bill.
- The RHLF's main purpose, as a wholesale lending institution, is to enable retail institutions to provide loans to low-income earners to finance housing in rural areas.

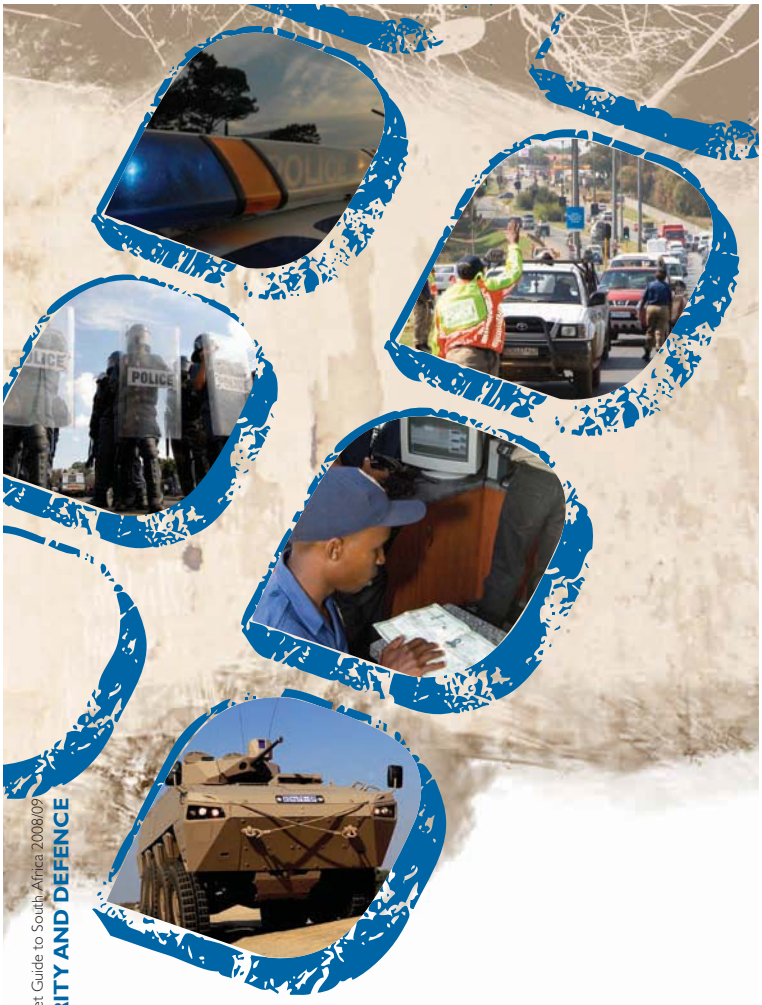
Subsidies

A government housing subsidy is a grant provided by government to qualifying beneficiaries for housing purposes. Government does not give beneficiaries cash. The grant is used only for acquiring housing goods and services or the provision of complete houses that comply with the minimum technical and environmental norms and standards.

The following subsidies exist:

- Consolidation Subsidy
- Individual Subsidy
- Project-Linked Subsidy
- Institutional Subsidy
- Relocation Assistance
- Discount Benefit Scheme
- rural subsidies
- People's Housing Process.

The South African Housing Subsidy Scheme subsidised quantum amounts for the period 1 April 2008 to 31 March 2009 in respect of a 40-m² house.			
Individual and project-linked subsidies	**Top structure funding**	**Own contribution**	**Product price**
R0 – R1 500 R1 501 – R3 500	R43 506 R41 027	None R2 479	R43 506 R43 506
Indigent: Aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 – R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Institutional subsidies			
R0 – R3 500	R41 027	Institution must add capital	At least R43 506
Consolidation subsidies			
R0 – R1 500 R1 501 – R3 500	R43 506 R41 027	None R2 479	R43 506 R43 506
Indigent: Aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 – R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
Rural subsidies			
R0 – R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506
People's Housing Process			
R0 – R3 500	R43 506	None	R43 506



The Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster of government continues to implement the decisions of Cabinet to establish a new, modernised, efficient and transformed criminal justice system (CJS).

At the heart of the revamped CJS is the commitment to enhance the provision of quality and professional services, including the dispensation of swift, equitable and fair justice, as well as to boost the integrity of the CJS.

The National Commissioner heads the South African Police Service (SAPS). Five deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commmissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner.

As part of its commitment to fight crime, government has redeployed more resources to the various police stations in the country.

The policy documents governing policing in South Africa include the SAPS Act, 1995 and the 1996 National Crime-Prevention Strategy.

The operational priorities of the department's strategic plan for 2005 to 2010 are:

- combating organised crime
- fighting serious and violent crime
- addressing crime against women and children
- improving on other SAPS priorities that affect basic service delivery.

Reducing crime

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing; that is, partnerships between the community and the SAPS. Partnerships between police officers (who are appointed as sector managers) and communities strengthen existing community policing forums (CPFs), which have been in place since 1993. By March 2008, 1 111 CPFs were fully operating at 1 115 police stations.

Sector policing was introduced in 2002/03 to increase the visibility and accessibility of police officers, particularly in areas that have limited infrastructure and high crime levels. It is implemented continually.

Sector policing has been implemented at 139 of the 169 high-priority areas. The CPFs are actively involved in crime-prevention

and awareness programmes, allowing the police to mobilise and involve communities in the fight against crime, as well as forming partnerships with businesses and other stakeholders in communities to address concerns about crime.

The National Community Policing Consultative Forum (NCPCF) represents role-players from the SAPS, the National Secretariat for Safety and Security and the provincial chairpersons of the CPFs. By mid-2008, the following matters were under discussion at the NCPCF:

- standardising the CPFs' constitution
- developing a draft communication and marketing strategy for CPFs
- developing training material for CPFs.

The SAPS is dedicated to uplifting historically disadvantaged communities. This includes building community safety centres (CSCs) that focus on delivering basic and easily accessible services to communities, especially in deep rural areas and informal settlements.

CSCs bring together the SAPS and the departments of justice and constitutional development, correctional services, health and social development.

Fighting crime

The crime statistics for the period 1 April 2007 to 31 March 2008 were compared to the same period the previous year. It was reported that all eight of the contact crimes showed decreases during the reporting period. The reduction in these crimes was as follows:

- common robbery: 9,5%
- rape: 8,8%
- attempted murder: 7,5%
- robbery with aggravating circumstances: 7,4%
- common assault: 6,6%
- murder: 4,7%
- assault with the intention to do grievous bodily harm: 4,6%
- indecent assault: 2,1%.

An overall decrease of 6,4% in the incidence of contact crimes was achieved during the financial year under review.

Although robbery with aggravating circumstances accounts for about 5% of contact crimes and 2% of all serious crimes, the increase in some subcategories, such as robberies at residential premises, robberies at business premises, truck hijackings and carjacking, is of extreme concern. These subcategories showed increases of 13,5%, 47,4%, 39,6% and 4,4% respectively.

Despite the above, most of the property-related, contact-related and other serious crimes experienced decreased.

Reductions were recorded in the incidence of malicious damage to property (-5,4%), arson (-6,6%), burglary at residential premises (-5,6%), theft of motor vehicles (-7,9%) and stock theft (-1,2%).

Forensic Science Services (FSS) and Criminal Record Centre (CRC)

The function of the CRC is primarily the provisioning of previous conviction reports to courts, while the FSS provides scientific support in the investigation of crime.

The following improvements and additions to the CRC's capacity will assist in investigating crime:

- Sixty local CRC fingerprint laboratories were upgraded to international specifications.
- A shoe-print system has been implemented.
- A "scene-of-crime" terminal has been acquired and is to be implemented as a pilot project. This terminal will provide the local CRC personnel with the option of searching latent fingerprints obtained at the crime scene against the Automated Fingerprint Identification System database.

The Biology Section of the FSS has ensured that the Genetic Sample Processing System (GSPS) is now fully functional and is greatly adding to the laboratory's capacity to process DNA-related entries. It is primarily used to analyse samples where the suspect is unknown. The production of the GSPS is scheduled to reach a target of about 4 000 various DNA analyses (inclusive of isolation, amplification and fragment analyses) per week. By using the GSPS, the laboratory will be able to ensure that more than 1 000 entries per month are finalised.

The Ballistics Section has implemented the national Integrated Ballistics Identification System (IBIS) database, which contributed to greater accuracy in the identification of firearms. At present, a three-dimensional correlation system is being implemented, which, being part of the IBIS, will improve the accuracy of identification of firearms from about 85% to 100%.

Detective Service

The Detective Service is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

Visible Policing

Visible Policing is responsible for providing a proactive and reactive policing service. It is regarded as a line function and its components are Visible Policing, Social-Crime Prevention, Police Emergency Services, Specialised Operations, Firearm and Liquor Control, Borderline Operations and Crime-Combating Operations.

Visible Policing is responsible for combating crime through anti-crime operations, activities at police stations, maintaining high visibility and the availability of police officials at grassroots level. It also oversees sector policing, reservists, municipal police services and closed-circuit television (CCTV) surveillance.

In July 2008, the South African Police Service (SAPS) unveiled its plans to secure the skies, stadiums, highways, streets and tourist destinations for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The security preparations include R665 million for tools and R640 million for deploying tens of thousands of police officers, who will patrol and police crucial venues during the tournament. Some 41 092 police officers would be deployed above those already deployed for normal policing. By July 2008, the SAPS had started procuring items needed to police the event, including water cannons, body armour, 100 BMWs for route patrols, mobile police stations for the stadiums, 300 surveillance cameras, helicopters and unmanned surveillance aircraft.

Social Crime Prevention deals with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children.

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress, and provides dog and mounted services. Hostage and suicide negotiators, police drivers, and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad provide specialised services.

The Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

Firearms and Liquor Control eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. The component also ensures compliance with and effective enforcement of liquor-control legislation to address serious, violent and contact crime in South Africa.

In 2007/08, more than 64 000 firearms were destroyed.

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, including combating public violence; stabilising serious and violent crime incidents; policing public gatherings; rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force); and handling high-risk operations.

Six Robinson helicopters were procured for the SAPS Airwing and were delivered from June 2008. These small cost-effective helicopters were deployed in provinces to speed up experience-building of young pilots to get them operationally ready within a short period of time. These helicopters will also contribute to aerial observation to combat crime. A Cessna Sovereign Jet was also introduced into the SAPS during March 2008, which enhances the SAPS' capacity to speedily transport top management and special units over longer distances whether within or outside the borders of South Africa.

Borderline Operations combats transnational crimes at air, sea and land borderlines. Land Borderline Control polices the South African land borderline. Air Borderline Control polices more than 1 000 smaller airfields and airstrips. Sea Borderline Control is

responsible for policing smaller sea harbours and slipways, including the South African ocean. During 2006/07, the operational area of responsibility extended seawards by 200 nautical miles and 10 kilometres inland off the shoreline. The process of the SAPS taking over the borderline-control function from the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is expected to be finalised in 2009.

Preparations for the 2010 Soccer Cup

South Africa is expected to deploy 41 000 police officers specifically to ensure the safety of visitors to the country during the 2010 World Cup. There will be one police officer for every 10 foreign tourists expected for the duration of the event. Government plans to increase the number of police officers in the country to 192 000 by the end of 2009/10.

To maintain safety and security during the 2010 World Cup and comply with FIFA requirements, an additional amount of R665,6 million was allocated to the Department for Safety and Security in the 2007 Budget for the procurement of operational equipment such as helicopters, CCTV, radio communications, roadblocks and riot and other technical equipment.

A dedicated structure for continuous safety and security planning has been established and works in collaboration with the 2010 Organising Committee. A strategy has also been developed to co-ordinate the gathering and dissemination of intelligence.

The plan is to make available police escorts for teams, referees and members of the FIFA delegation; and to provide security at land, sea and air borders, routes and venues – namely stadiums, hotels, events and tourists attractions. The SAPS also plans to patrol routes to and from the airports, and into the cities and to provide video feeds to the operational headquarters in Pretoria using command vehicles and helicopters equipped with cameras.

International police officers from every country playing in the event will also be present, wearing their own uniforms, to assist the SAPS and public.

Defence

The mission of the Department of Defence is to defend and protect South Africa, its territorial integrity and its people.

The department, under the auspices of the New Partnership for Africa's Development, participates in various initiatives to secure peace and stability on the continent.

The SANDF is an all-volunteer force consisting of a regular core force and a reserve force. In addition to military matters, the Department of Defence is involved in search-and-rescue operations, hydrography and securing national key points.

Uniformed members of the SANDF have the right to join trade unions, but may not go on strike or picket.

Peace support

The number of South African peacekeeping operations on the African continent has increased. As an erstwhile member of the African Union Peace and Security Council, South Africa has become a significant contributor to peacekeeping in Africa. This includes troop contributions (both military units and individuals as civilian police, military observers and military staff officers) and mediation or facilitation. For the first time, members have also been deployed outside the African continent with, for example, the deployment of five members in support of the United Nations Political Mission in Nepal. South Africa has also rendered assistance to a number of countries during disasters (e.g. Mozambique) and elections (e.g. Madagascar and Lesotho) while assistance in support of post-conflict reconstruction is ongoing in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo and Sudan.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor)

Armscor is a statutory body established in accordance with the Armscor Limited Act, 2003. The Minister of Defence is the executive authority responsible for Armscor. The management and control of Armscor resides with a board of directors, while its

day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armscor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate.

These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities.

Armscor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and, with the approval of the Minister of Defence, for any organ of state, public entities and any sovereign state that may require such services.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd is a state-owned company operating in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. It was incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the Companies Act, 1973.

Apart from being original equipment manufacturers in certain product categories, the Denel businesses are also engaged in the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of the defence systems in the SANDF's arsenal. As such, they ensure a greater measure of strategic independence for the country, while providing the SANDF with the cost-effective means to undertake its role in peacekeeping and in peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

Denel has developed innovative technologies in several niche areas, notably in artillery, munitions, missiles and unmanned aerial vehicles. Along with specific production capabilities, its businesses are well positioned to act as specialised contractors to global defence suppliers.

Intelligence services

South Africa has two civilian intelligence structures: the National Intelligence Agency (NIA) and the South African Secret Service (SASS).

South Africa's involvement in peacekeeping operations in Africa

	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008
MONUC (DRC)	1	113	161	1 430	1 430	1 230	1 242	1 248	1 248
IEMF (DRC)				22					
TPMM (DRC)			3	3					
UNMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	3	6	6	6	10	6	6	6	1
OLMEE (Eritrea and Ethiopia)	2	2	5	5	4	1	1	1	1
SAPSD (Burundi)		701	750						
AMID (Burundi)				1 500					
ONUB (Burundi)					1 100	930	855		
BINUB (Burundi)									
ALIPF (Burundi)					337	337	337		
AUSIF (Burundi)								750	1 000
UNMIL (Liberia)					3	3			
UNMIS (Southern Sudan)								4	4
AMIS (Southern Sudan)					10	339	620	620	
UNAMID (Sudan-Darfur)									800
Southern Sudan-Uganda								2	
Total number of personnel deployed		**870**	**925**	**2 965**	**2 894**	**2 846**	**3 071**	**2 632**	**3 054**

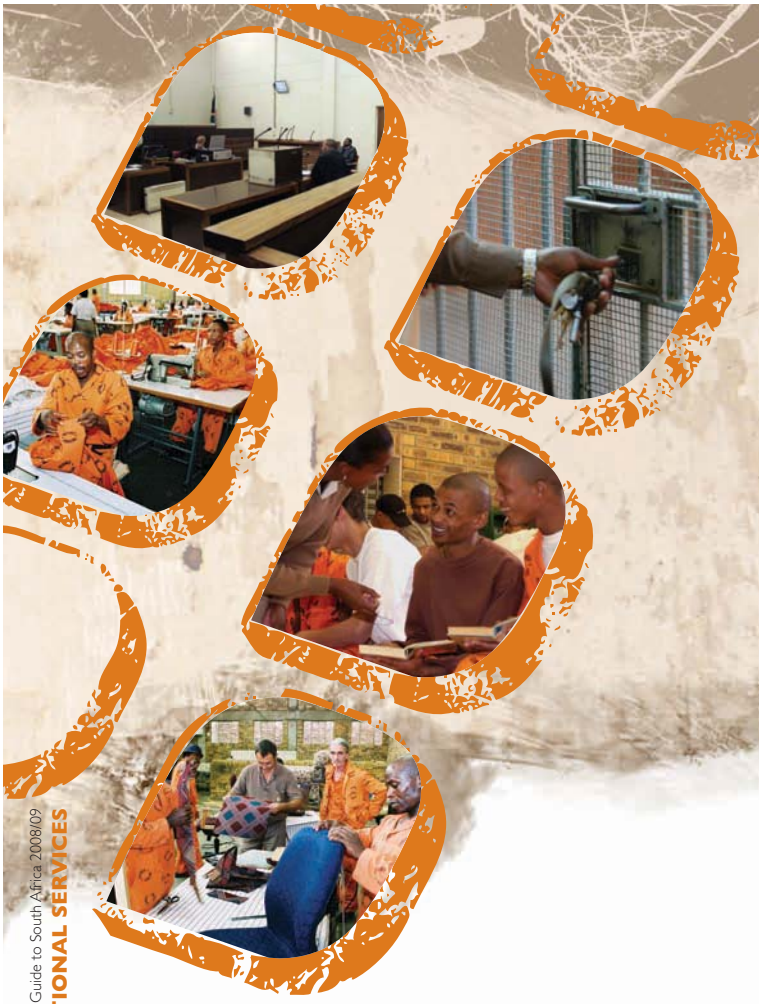
Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

Denel, under the political direction of the Ministry of Public Enterprises, has been restructured and reorganised. Armscor, under the political direction of the Ministry of Defence, has been streamlined as an acquisition division of the Department of Defence. The research divisions of both Denel and Armscor will be located in a new body called the "Defence Evaluation and Research Institute".

The NIA's mission is to provide government with domestic intelligence and counter-intelligence. The NIA's mandate has been divided into seven areas of interest: counter-intelligence; political, economic and border intelligence; terrorism; organised crime and corruption.

The SASS is South Africa's foreign-intelligence capacity. A civilian ministry and a Cabinet committee exercise executive control.

The SASS' objective is to forewarn, inform and advise government on real and potential threats to South Africa's security, and on socio-economic opportunities for the country.



JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES

Judicial authority is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution of South Africa, 1996 and the law. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts.

The courts

Constitutional Court

This is the highest court in all constitutional matters and deals only with constitutional issues. The court's work includes deciding whether Acts of Parliament and the conduct of the President and executive are consistent with the Constitution, including the Bill of Rights.

The court's decisions are binding on all persons, including organs of state, and on all other courts. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and 11 Constitutional Court judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)

The SCA is the highest court in respect of all other matters. The court has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court. Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order.

It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA and a number of judges of appeal determined by an Act of Parliament.

High courts

There are 10 court divisions and three local divisions, which judges of the provincial courts concerned preside over.

A provincial or local division has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons in that area. These divisions hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or impose a penalty.

Except where minimum or maximum sentences are prescribed by law, the penal jurisdiction of these courts is unlimited and includes life imprisonment.

The Land Claims Court and the Labour Court have the same status as the High Court. In the case of labour disputes, appeals are made to the Labour Appeal Court.

Regional courts

Regional courts, established in each regional division, have jurisdiction over all offences, except treason. Unlike the High Court, the penal jurisdiction of the regional courts is limited.

Magistrates' courts

By mid-2008, there were 1 830 magistrates in the country (including regional court magistrates). A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences, except treason, murder and rape.

By mid-2008, there were 366 magisterial districts and main magistrates' offices, 80 branch courts and 246 periodical courts in South Africa.

Small claims courts

A commissioner in the Small Claims Court hears cases involving civil claims not exceeding R7 000.

By June 2008, there were 168 such courts across the country. The commissioner is usually a practising advocate or attorney, a legal academic or another competent person who offers his or her services free of charge. Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. There is no appeal to a higher court.

There is a national programme that aims to strengthen and roll out small claims courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

Sexual offences courts

These specialised courts allow sexual offences' cases to be handled with sensitivity to avoid secondary victimisation of traumatised victims.

Equality courts

By the end of 2007/08, 219 magisterial courts had courts designated as equality courts and the remaining 152 magisterial districts were expected to be designated in 2008/09. Section 16(1)(a) of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Discrimination Act, 2000 provides that every high court is an equality court for its area of jurisdiction.

Community courts

Community courts, like the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the community and business. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

Thirteen community courts have been established. By mid-2008, four had been formally launched and were fully operational in Hatfield (Pretoria), Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchell's Plain and Cape Town. Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Court for Income Tax Offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders. The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or failure to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

In 2008, the Legal Services Charter, which could become a milestone in legal-sector transformation, was completed.

Full participation of the legal profession is a reflection of the commitment of the legal sector towards establishing a tranformed justice system.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development introduced an internship programme to give graduates opportunities to acquire the required skills in law.

In 2008/09, the department put aside R15 million to sustain the programme. In 2007, more than 130 legal graduates were placed in the various areas of the legal profession as part of the National Youth Service Programme. In 2008, at least 80 were placed with university law clinics, while another 45 were placed with the Offices of the State Attorney countrywide.

Chiefs' courts

An authorised African headman or his deputy may hear and determine civil claims, arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before him by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

Litigants have the right to choose whether to institute an action in a chief's court or in a magistrate's court. Proceedings in a chief's court are informal. An appeal against a judgment of a chief's court is heard in a magistrate's court.

Special Investigating Unit (SIU)

The SIU, created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, is an independent statutory body that is directly accountable to Parliament and the President of South Africa. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report on the outcomes thereof. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996.

National Prosecuting Authority (NPA)

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Witness-Protection Programme, the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) and units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (Soca) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU) and the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU).

By mid-2008, of the 199 judges, 48,23% (96) were white, 35,68% (71) were African, 7,54% (15) were coloured and 8,55% (17) were Indian.

Overall, 18,59% were female and 81,42% male. In terms of the lower-court judiciary, of the 1 830 magistrates, 47% were white, 38% African, 7% coloured and 8% Indian. Overall, 31% were female and 69% male.

The transformation of the judiciary is closely linked with the transformation of the legal profession and of legal scholarship. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has worked in partnership with law schools in transforming the curriculum of the basic law degree to bring it in line with modern best practices.

Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU)

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought from the proceeds of crime, or property that was used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court
- create the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law.

According to the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's *2007/08 Annual Report*, the AFU had finalised 1 100 cases to the value of R663 million.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Since its establishment in October 1999, the Soca Unit has aimed to:

- reduce victimisation of women and children by enhancing capacity to prosecute sexual offences and domestic-violence cases
- reduce secondary victimisation of complainants and raise public awareness of the scourge of sexual offences and domestic violence
- ensure proper management of young offenders.

Supporting activities operated by Soca include its multidisciplinary Thuthuzela Care Centres (TCCs), recognised by the United

Nations General Assembly as a "world best-practice model" in the field of gender-violence management and response.

TCCs are one-stop facilities that have been introduced as a critical part of South Africa's Anti-Rape Strategy, aiming to reduce secondary trauma for victims, improve conviction rates and reduce the cycle time for finalising cases.

TCCs are in operation in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is a specialist unit mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. The PCLU was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director. The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecutions of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

National Prosecutions Service

The significant majority of the NPA's prosecutors are housed in the NPS, the organisation's biggest unit. The NPS is headed by a Deputy National Director who reports to the National Director of Public Prosecutions. A Director of Public Prosecutions heads the organisation in each region, with public prosecutors and state advocates manning the nation's district, regional and high courts.

The NPA is "the people's lawyer", and thus represents and acts on behalf of the people in all criminal trials. The NPA does not seek only to secure convictions but rather to ensure that the interest of justice is served in all cases.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU aims to reduce commercial crime by the effective investigation and prosecution of complex commercial crime.

The SCCU's mandate is to accept responsibility for the investigation and prosecution of commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the South African Police Service in Pretoria and Johannesburg, respectively. The client base of the SCCU comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals, and corporate bodies to state departments.

The investigation and prosecution process of the SCCU is driven through a combined prosecutor and investigator approach conducive to the methodical planning of the outcome and speedy finalisation of cases registered.

Public Protector

The Public Protector investigates complaints from the public or on own initiatives against government at any level, its officials, persons performing public functions, corporations or companies where the State and statutory councils are involved.The Public Protector's services are free and available to everyone.

Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible. The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party.

No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Victims' Charter

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime in South Africa and minimum standards for services for victims of crime are important instruments

elaborating and consolidating rights and obligations relating to services applicable to victims and survivors of crime in the country.

The charter identifies the following rights of crime victims:

- to be treated with fairness, respect, dignity and privacy
- to offer information
- to receive information
- protection
- assistance
- compensation
- restitution.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission Unit

The TRC Unit was established in September 2005 to audit, monitor and co-ordinate government's implementation of the TRC recommendations.

The TRC Unit works closely with the President's Fund Office, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. The President's Fund Office has been giving effect to the payment of both urgent interim and final reparations to the 16 837 victims who applied for reparations and were approved by the TRC.

Correctional services

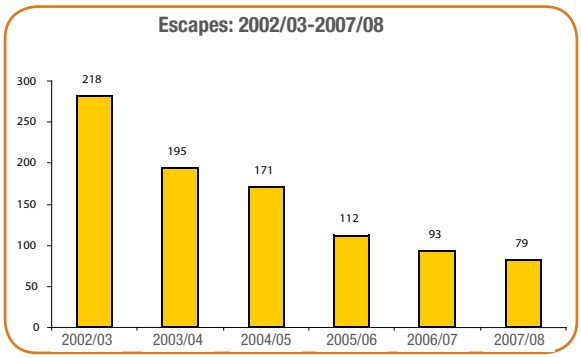
The Department of Correctional Services aims to provide adequate correctional-centre accommodation that complies with accepted standards. By March 2008, 165 840 offenders were housed in 239 facilities countrywide, including:

- eight correctional centres for female offenders only
- 13 youth correctional facilities
- 13 correctional centres for male offenders only
- 86 correctional centres for both male and female offenders.

Two correctional centres were closed for renovations.

There are two private prisons in South Africa.

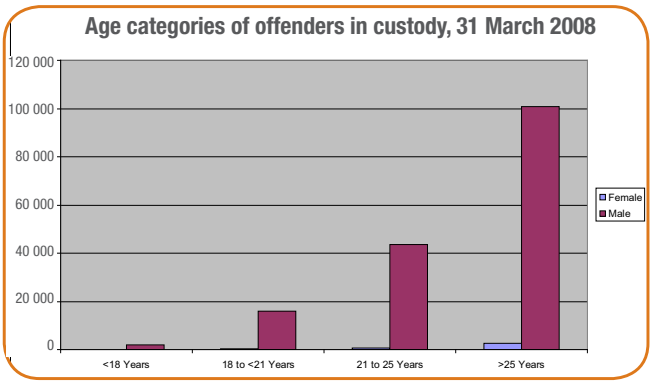
In centres where male, female and juvenile offenders are accommodated, female and juvenile offenders are housed in separate designated sections.



Overcrowding in correctional centres

To alleviate overcrowding, unsentenced juveniles have been transferred to places of secure care, some sentences have been converted to correctional supervision, and facilities have been renovated or upgraded.

National and provincial action plans to fast-track all children awaiting trial from prisons and police cells since October 2004 have led to a reduction in the number of children awaiting trial.



No prisoners may be released before they have served at least half their sentence. The Criminal Law Amendment Act, 1997 provides for much harsher sentences for serious crimes. These changes are expected to place an even greater burden on prisons.

An independent judicial inspectorate regularly visits all prisons to report on conditions and prisoners' treatment.

PRISONER

SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

The Department of Social Development aims to ensure the provision of comprehensive, integrated, sustainable and quality social-development services that address vulnerability and poverty, and to create an enabling environment for sustainable development in partnership with those committed to building a caring society.

Legislation

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that lists all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

In 2008/09, the Department of Social Development allocated over R22 million towards the protection of children. To get South Africa ready to implement the Children's Act, 2005, government increased awareness of the legislation and draft regulations while accelerating service delivery to children.

The Older Persons Act, 2006 contains provisions to improve the lives of older South Africans.

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

Amounts of grants per month as at 1 November 2008

Grant type	Amount
Old-Age Grant	R960
Disability Grant	R960
War-Veterans' Grant	R960
Foster-Care Grant	R650
Care-Dependency Grant	R960
Child-Support Grant	R240
Grant-in-Aid	R210

Payment of social grants

Social-assistance transfers are funded from general revenue and are appropriated on the Vote of the Department of Social Development. Social-assistance cash grants provide targeted income support to those whose livelihoods are most at risk. The available grants are the old-age, disability, child-support, foster-care, care-dependency and war-veterans' grants, and temporary grant-in-aid relief.

In February 2008, the Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, announced that the qualifying age for men for old-age pension would be reduced from 65 to 63 in 2008, to 61 in 2009 and to 60 by 2010. More than 23 million older persons receive the Old-Age Grant.

Expenditure on social security increased from R36,9 billion in 2003/04, which was 2,9% of gross domestic product (GDP), to a projected R73 billion in 2009/10, constituting 3,1% of GDP.

By March 2008, about R12,4 million people were receiving social grants. By October 2008, 8,3 million children were receiving the Child-Support Grant, which is provided to children in need up to the age of 15 years from 1 January 2009.

By October 2008, 494 992 children were receiving the Foster-Care Grant. Foster care is a temporary measure until the children reach the age of 18, unless an extension is requested.

By July 2008, 1,4 million people were receiving the Disability Grant.

Social assistance and security fraud

An employment-assistance directorate in the Department of Social Development links social-grant beneficiaries with economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies, for the possible exit from the social-grants system. In line with this thinking, Cabinet approved, in principle, a proposal to explore possible economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies for the same purpose.

The department's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (*fraud@socdev.gov.za*).

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal-control systems have been improved and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

By September 2008, the department had removed 333 233 grants from the system, with an annual value of over R1 billion. It had ensured that 21 189 irregular private beneficiaries and public servants repay illegally obtained grants worth R114 374 million.

War on poverty

In August 2008, government launched the national War on Poverty Campaign to reduce poverty among the country's poorest citizens. The most deprived households identified in the poorest wards were visited periodically during the campaign by a team of professionals and community workers to identify their specific needs and to accelerate access to government services and provide safety nets.

The success of tackling poverty and social exclusion requires that every sector plays its part. "War rooms" that are inclusive of, among other things, government at all levels, business, and voluntary and community organisations have been set up to fight poverty.

Local government departments will intervene in areas such as the provision of free basic services, public works and other indigent measures.

The War on Poverty Campaign's unique approach draws on the experience of other focused and targeted initiatives, such as the urban and rural development strategy, Project Consolidate and izimbizo to bring about maximum impact in identified communities.

South Africa is signatory to various international declarations on the promotion and protection of the rights of women and children, such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child, the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women and the Declaration on the Elimination of Violence Against Women.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Infections 2007 to 2011 serves as South Africa's primary HIV and AIDS policy document. Recognising the growing need to combat the further spread of the epidemic, the plan hinges on four key priorities, namely:

- prevention
- treatment, care and support
- monitoring, research and surveillance
- human rights and access to justice.

The sustained national response is beginning to pay some dividends as data indicates that the infection rate among women younger than 20 has decreased significantly, while the average national HIV prevalence among young pregnant women has shown signs of stabilisation since 2006.

Home- and community-based care (HCBC)

HCBC is based on the premise that vulnerable children and their families are better protected and supported within the context of their communities. As a result, this programme informs one of the main development strategies currently implemented by

From the beginning of June 2008, the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) is accepting social-grant applications from eligible applicants who are having trouble getting official identity documents and birth certificates.

As stipulated in the regulations of 2005, Sassa accepts sworn affidavits deposed before a commissioner of oaths testifying to, among other details, the names, age, and parentage of the child and any other applicant.

Although this policy shift was initially designed to accommodate applicants for the Child-Support Grant, the Department of Social Development has decided to extend its implementation to all grant types.

The benefit will be for people who apply and meet the eligibility and means-test criteria.

the Department of Social Development to enable communities and people affected by HIV and AIDS to access social-development services. Norms and standards for the implementation of HCBC and support have been developed to ensure good quality of services and to provide a minimum package of services to be rendered. The norms and standards were based on the evaluation of costs and process indicators for HCBC undertaken in three provinces.

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

The Department of Social Development provides care and support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS and other circumstances. Childcare forums work hand-in-hand with social workers, welfare organisations and other structures in the community to ensure that the identified children get access to appropriate services.

The objective of government's social-cohesion initiative is to provide a material basis for social cohesion and social justice.

By July 2008, the following areas were receiving attention: poverty, unemployment, deprivation, lack of access to basic services and opportunities and the elimination of racism, sexism, xenophobia and other forms of intolerance.

The draft National Family Policy had been developed to provide guidelines for integrated services to promote the functionality of families.

A policy for people with disabilities had been drafted to enhance the integration and mainstreaming of the disabled and to ensure that they receive adequate services and support.

A draft framework for moral regeneration was being finalised.

A progress report on the reform of social security and retirement was handed to the interministerial committee that had been created to deal with this issue. The tasks of the committee included: the review of the social-assistance grants; the design of a contributory retirement system; a social-security governance and system framework; the co-ordination of administrative agencies; national health insurance; and the regulation of complementary social-insurance reforms.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are provided with meals and lunch boxes before they go to school. Caregivers at the drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed households with homework and involve them in lifeskills programmes.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children (OVC), which will include child-headed households. The programmes to assist OVC include access to treatment, food, skills training and psychosocial support.

By May 2008, some 237 000 vulnerable children had benefited from the department's OVC programmes, which encourage children from households headed by children to remain within and participate in the communities of their birth. This contributes to integrated community-based care which is in the best interests of the children concerned.

Each community should have a childcare forum that works with social workers, welfare organisations and other community structures to ensure that identified OVC receive appropriate services.

National councils

The Department of Social Development strives to strengthen the capacity of civil society to actively engage in social and economic development, by supporting the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- South African National Epilepsy League
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

Statutory bodies include the National Development Agency (NDA), relief boards and the Central Drug Authority.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a statutory funding agency that aims to contribute to the alleviation of poverty, address its causes, and strengthen the capacity of civil-society organisations to combat poverty.

The key strategic objectives of the NDA are, among other things, to grant funds to civil-society organisations to meet the development needs of poor communities; proactively strengthen organisations' institutional capacity for long-term sustainability; source funds for the NDA; and promote consultation, dialogue and the sharing of development experiences.

Non-profit organisations (NPOs)

The NPO Act, 1997 mandates the Department of Social Development to contribute towards creating an enabling environment within which NPOs can flourish. The Directorate: NPOs was established in terms of this legislation to manage the registration facility and increase public access to information on registered organisations. The legal mandate requires that the directorate registers organisations within two months after receipt of a complete application and that it provides support for organisations to register and meet reporting requirements.

The registration and reporting of organisations has increased substantially since the inception of the Act in 1998. By mid-2007, 44 062 organisations had registered.

The overarching vision of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is a prosperous and equitable society living in harmony with its natural resources.

ENVIRONMENT

Government leads protection of the environment by example. At regional level, the provincial conservation agencies are major role-players, and independent statutory organisations such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

South Africa has taken several concrete steps to implement the United Nations' (UN) Agenda 21 on Sustainable Development. These include reforming environmental policies, ratifying international agreements and participating in many global and regional sustainable-development initiatives.

Environmental heritage

South Africa enjoys the third-highest level of biodiversity in the world. It has between 250 000 and a million species of organisms, many of which occur nowhere else in the world.

While South Africa occupies about 2% of the world's land area, it is estimated that the country is home to 10% of the world's plants and 7% of the reptiles, birds and mammals. The southern African coast is home to almost 15% of known coastal marine species, providing a rich source of nutrition and supporting livelihoods of coastal communities.

Important dates:

World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Arbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October

The 12th session of the African Ministerial Conference on the Environment (AMCEN) was held in June 2008 at the Sandton Convention Centre, Johannesburg. During the conference, the *Africa: Atlas of our Changing Environment* was launched. The atlas is the first major publication to depict environmental change in Africa's countries using satellite imagery, and is a resource for remedial action at all levels.

South Africa assumed the chair of AMCEN for the next two years, which will provide an opportunity to raise the profile of global environmental issues in Africa. It will represent Africa at international environmental meetings.

The National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Sanbi revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems were threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers were threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three were in critical danger and 12% of marine biozones were under serious threat.

South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan aims to guide conservation and the management of biodiversity to ensure sustainable and equitable benefits for all communities.

The country's three globally recognised biodiversity hotspots are the Cape Floral Region, which falls entirely within South African boundaries; the Succulent Karoo, which South Africa shares with Namibia; and Maputaland-Pondoland, which South Africa shares with Mozambique and Swaziland.

The coastline meets the Atlantic, Indian and Southern oceans, which provide exceptional habitats ranging from cool water kelp forests to tropical coral reefs.

The Cape Floral Kingdom has the highest recorded species diversity for any similar-sized temperate or tropical region in the world. It is a world heritage site.

Biodiversity is protected and promoted through institutions and initiatives such as the:

- South African Biodiversity Facility
- South African Biosystematics Initiative
- South African Environmental Observation Network
- Biobank South Africa.

Biomes

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa. These biomes can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The biomes are the Savanna, Nama-Karoo, Succulent Karoo, Grassland, Fynbos, Forest, Thicket and Desert. The Fynbos Biome is one of only six floral kingdoms worldwide.

Conservation areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity, to which South Africa is a signatory, requires that 10% of terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature.

By May 2008, about 5,9% of South Africa's land surface area was under formal conservation through the system of national and provincial protected areas.

Scientific reserves

These are sensitive, undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited. Examples are Marion Island and the Prince Edward islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited, and underdeveloped, and access to them is strictly controlled. Examples are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape.

In May 2008, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and South African National Parks completed the second year of implementation of the Infrastructure Development Programme for which a total amount of R541 million was made available over a four-year period.

By May 2008, the programme had employed 1 357 people. Some 50 small, medium and micro-enterprises were empowered and transformation in the construction industry was actively supported.

Under this programme:

- 145 tourism-accommodation units were upgraded and many new accommodation units constructed in various national parks
- 89 upgraded and new staff accommodation units were put in place in various national parks.

Construction work has also started on important initiatives that include:

- a new entrance gate at Twee Rivieren in the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- conference centres in Mopani and Skukuza rest camps in the Kruger National Park
- a world-class centre in Mapungubwe National Park that will celebrate the rich heritage of this world heritage site.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks manages several national parks throughout South Africa, excluding in Gauteng, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. The system of national parks is representative of the country's important ecosystems and unique natural features.

Commercial and tourism-conservation development and the involvement of local communities are regarded as performance indicators. These areas include national parks, provincial parks, nature reserves and indigenous state forests proclaimed in terms of the National Environment Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003.

South Africa is in the process of establishing transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs) in co-operation with its neighbouring countries.

The conservation status of the areas within these TFCAs varies from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting concession areas. Though fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, co-operation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

Southern Africa's transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs) have packaged 53 investment opportunities in the various countries. They range from small and medium lodge-type developments to multimillion-rand developments, such as the Kavango-Zambesi Waterfront Development.

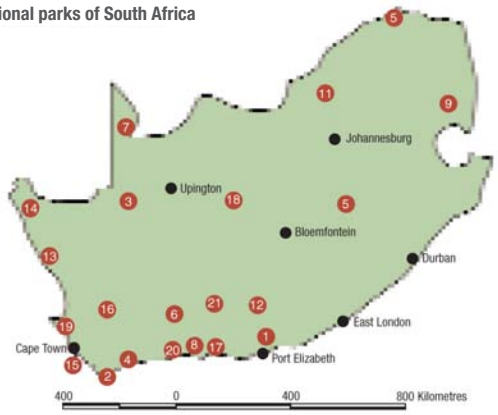
The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism hosted an investment conference on behalf of the nine Southern African Development Community countries (Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe) in October 2008. The objective of this conference was to market a portfolio of uniquely packaged tourism investment opportunities in the seven existing TFCAs to potential investors.

TFCAs allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The six identified TFCAs are the:

- Ais-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Limpopo-Shashe TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area.

National parks of South Africa



1. Addo Elephant National Park
2. Agulhas National Park
3. Augrabies Falls National Park
4. Bontebok National Park
5. Golden Gate Highlands National Park
6. Karoo National Park
7. Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
8. Knysna National Park
9. Kruger National Park
10. Mapungubwe National Park
11. Marakele National Park
12. Mountain Zebra National Park
13. Namaqua National Park
14. Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park
15. Table Mountain National Park
16. Tankwa Karoo National Park
17. Tsitsikamma National Park
18. Vaalbos National Park
19. West Coast National Park
20. Wilderness National Park
21. Camdeboo National Park

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

Biosphere reserves include outstanding natural beauty and biological diversity, exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

In December 1999, Robben Island, the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (formerly the Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park) and the Cradle of Humankind were proclaimed world heritage sites by the United Nations Educational, Science and Cultural Organisation (Unesco).

The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was nominated as a mixed site. In July 2003, the site of the Mapungubwe civilisation became the fifth heritage site. The Cape Floral Region also became a world heritage site at the end of June 2004.

The Vredefort Dome in the Free State was declared South Africa's seventh world heritage site at the 29th session of the Unesco World Heritage Conference held in Durban in July 2005, when the body met in sub-Saharan Africa for the first time.

Makapan Valley in Limpopo and the Taung Cave in North West were declared extensions of the Cradle of Humankind.

The Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape was declared a world heritage site in 2007 and covers an area of 160 000 hectares (ha) of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-western part of South Africa.

The world's oldest map of Africa was commemorated in Cape Town on 25 August 2008. The Montalboddo Fracan map of Africa is 500 years old. It was first published in Milan in 1508 and is the first known map of Africa printed as a separate continent.

It was first printed in a book compiled by Italian monk Fracanzano Montalboddo. While modern-day maps are much more accurate and contain more information, it is through the Montalboddo Fracan map that Africa as a continent was first recognised and given an identity.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species, habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of products in protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Wetlands

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs, fens and midland marshes to swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of streambank wetlands.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation, support for small, medium and micro-enterprises and skills transfer.

Through the *National Wetland Inventory*, South Africa has identified 120 000 wetlands, which cover 7% of the country's surface area.

Many wetland plants have great medicinal value. In South Africa, traditional medicine is the preferred primary healthcare choice for about 70% of people. Wetlands provide some of the 19 500 tons of medicinal plant material, which are used by some 28 million South Africans every year.

South African water are of global importance for conserving seabirds. South Africa's sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands hold 44% of the world population of wandering albatrosses and 21% of the global population of Indian yellow-nosed albatrosses.

Surveys show that the numbers of African penguins breeding in the Western Cape have decreased by about 70% in the past four years, and the overall population of the species is presently at its lowest recorded level.

It is within this context that South Africa launched the National Plan of Action for reducing the incidental catch of seabirds in longline fisheries (NPoA seabirds) at the official opening of the international meeting of the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels. Launching the NPoA seabirds demonstrates South Africa's continued commitment to the conservation and management of seabirds in a sustainable and responsible manner.

Botanical gardens

Sanbi manages eight national botanical gardens in five of South Africa's nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. It displays 5 300 indigenous plant species, and was voted one of the top seven botanical gardens in the world at the International Botanical Congress held in Missouri, United States of America, in 1999.

The other gardens in the national network are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty's Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Nelspruit, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, the Pretoria National Botanical Garden and Hantam in the Northern Cape.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Contracting parties to the Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Region, the Abidjan Convention, met in South Africa on 10 June 2008 to strengthen strategies in response to the increasing challenges marine and coastal environments are faced with.

The Abidjan Convention area covers some of the most productive coastal and marine ecosystems in the world. These areas are rich in oil, gas and mineral resources and has a great potential for tourism. The coastal zones of the convention area are hubs for intense socio-economic activities and centres of human settlements, transport and industrial and commercial activities.

Zoos

There are a number of zoological gardens in South Africa. The 85-ha National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is one of the world's 10 best. It attracts more than 600 000

visitors annually. The national zoo is responsible for the biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane, and the satellite zoo and animal park at the Emerald Animal World complex in Vanderbijlpark.

The NZG is a national research facility, which presents an opportunity for the zoo to reposition itself as one of the world leaders in breeding and researching endangered species.

The NZG houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species. These figures comprise the animals housed at the zoo in Pretoria as well as at the two biodiversity conservation centres and the Emerald Animal World complex.

Marine protected areas (MPAs)

The MPAs are modelled on the success of the iSimangaliso Wetlands Park – with strict zoning of both marine and coastal protected areas. The four MPAs are Aliwal Shoal on the south coast of KwaZulu-Natal, the coastal and marine environment next to Pondoland in the Eastern Cape, Bird Island at Algoa Bay and the Cape Peninsula in the Western Cape.

Some of the protection measures to be implemented in the MPAs are restrictions for people who want to fish, as well as restrictions for stowing fishing gear when fishing from a vessel.

Marine resources

The sustainable exploitation of marine resources, on the one hand, and the demand for fish products from local and foreign consumers, on the other, pose a growing challenge globally, and South Africa, with its 3 000 km-long coastline, is no exception. The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 sets out the broad objectives of fishery management and access rights. It also sets empowerment and broad transformation objectives for the fishing industry.

South Africa's fisheries are among the best-managed in the world.

South Africa has joined several countries across the world in promoting the "eco-village" idea, which focuses on low-impact and sustainable living.

The idea is the vision of One Planet Living – a joint venture between the World Wide Fund for Nature and British environmental organisation BioRegional.

South Africa's first eco-village will be situated in Sibaya, north of Durban in KwaZulu-Natal. The village will be built on a 885-hectare site owned by one of the largest developers in South Africa, Tongaat Hulett Developments. Five thousand homes will be built on this land.

The eco-village concept is based on 10 guiding principles of sustainability, which include eradicating carbon-dioxide emissions; energy efficiency; recycling; sustainable transport systems, which cut dependency on fossil fuels; making use of locally sourced material and food to boost local economies; adhering to fair trade relationships; promoting biodiversity and preserving local cultural heritage; and endorsing physical, mental and spiritual well-being.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has completed the allocation of long-term commercial fishing rights of eight to 15 years in 20 fishing sectors. Out of more than 8 000 applicants for fishing rights, 2 480 were granted long-term fishing rights, with 59% of these being Black Economic Empowerment-compliant. By mid-2008, a performance review process of the commercial fishery rights' allocation was underway and draft policies on the transfer of commercial fishing rights and allocation of large pelagics had been published. To complete the allocation process, the department is working on a revised Policy on Subsistence/Small-Scale Fisheries.

South Africa has four environmental-protection vessels, namely the *Victoria Mxenge*, *Lilian Ngoyi, Sarah Baartman* and *Ruth First*.

The patrol vessels – all named after women who showed courage, dedication and commitment to the struggle for freedom – are used in assisting with high-speed disaster relief, search and rescue, evacuations, firefighting, pollution control, towing and

other emergency operations. The *Florence Mkhize* speed vessel assists in combating poaching.

South African beaches participate in the Blue Flag Campaign, which works towards sustainable development at beaches and marinas. This includes environmental education and information for the public, decision-makers and tourism operators.

South Africa's coastal-management policy is one of the best in the world, with the country being the first outside Europe to gain Blue Flag status for coastal management.

South Africa's Blue Flag beaches 2008/09

Eastern Cape

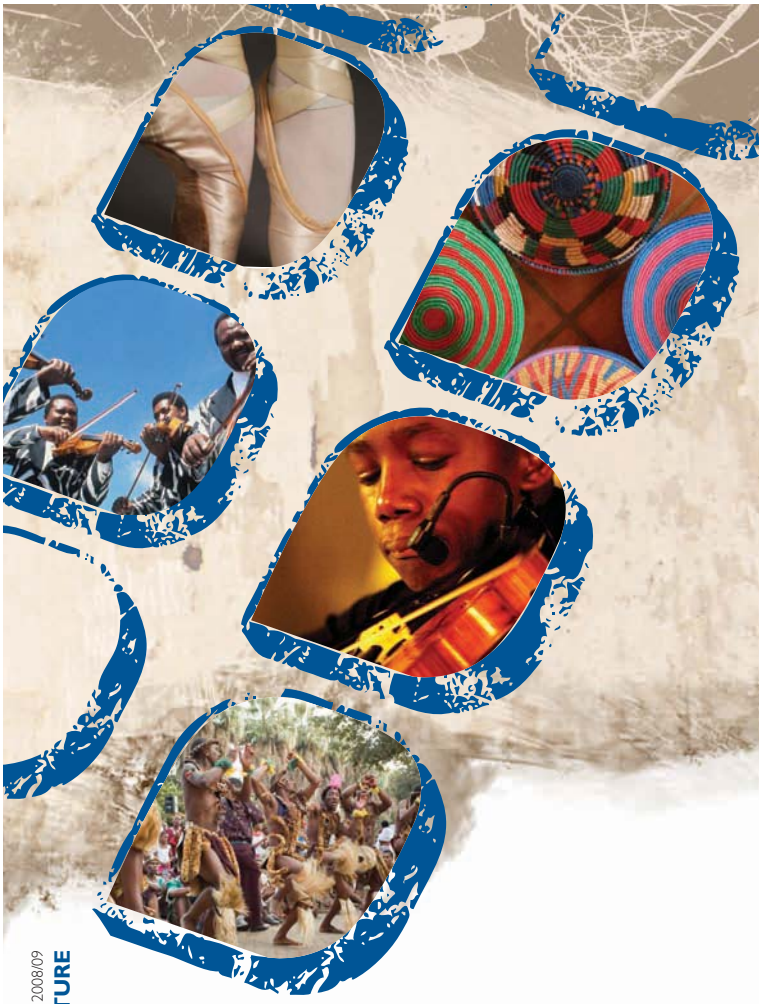
- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Hobie Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Kings Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Wells Estate, north of Port Elizabeth

KwaZulu-Natal

- Hibberdene Beach, south coast
- Margate Beach, south coast
- Marina/San Lameer Beach, south coast
- Ramsgate Beach, south coast

Western Cape

- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Camps Bay Beach, Cape Town
- Clifton 4th Beach, Cape Town
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Mnandi Beach, Cape Town
- Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
- Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town.



The Department of Arts and Culture is the custodian of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage. It is directly responsible for several public entities, including museums, art galleries, the National Archives and six playhouses.

ARTS AND CULTURE

A large proportion of the department's budget is dedicated to supporting and developing institutional infrastructure to showcase, restore and preserve South Africa's heritage for future generations.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in Culture

Investing in Culture is the department's flagship programme to eradicate poverty, providing the necessary skills to enable people to assume greater responsibility for their future.

The Investing in Culture Programme aims to provide access to skills and markets as a tool for urban regeneration, rural development and job creation.

Since 2005, through this programme, the Department of Arts and Culture has funded and supported 394 projects totalling R200 million. The programme created 7 374 jobs and training opportunities, of whom 45% of the beneficiaries were women, 39% youth and 4% were people with disabilities.

Three of the department's Investing in Culture projects have won the *Sowetan*-Old Mutual Community Builder of the Year Awards. The projects are the Ndhengeza Xizambani Community

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's coat of arms was adopted in 2000.

Symbolism

Rising sun: a life-giving force
Protea: beauty and the flowering of the nation
Ears of wheat: fertility of the land
Elephant tusks: wisdom, steadfastness and strength
Knobkierie and spear: defence of peace
Drum: love of culture

The motto, ***!Ke e:/xarra//ke***, written in the Khoisan language of the !Xam people, means "diverse people unite".

Project, Kopanang Community Project and Tinghwazi Arts and Crafts, based at rural communities in the Mopani District Municipality, Limpopo.

Other initiatives include:

- Indigenous Music and Oral History Project
- Heritage Month celebrations
- Mosadi wa Konokono (Woman of Substance)
- Youth in Arts
- Artists in Schools Project
- Art in Correctional Facilities Programme.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and celebrate its heritage.

The legacy projects include the:

- Women's Monument
- Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal
- Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project
- Samora Machel Project
- Nelson Mandela Museum
- Constitution Hill Project
- Sarah Baartman National Heritage Site and Human Rights Memorial
- Khoisan Legacy Project
- Freedom Park Project.

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, hosted the launch of the Timbuktu Script and Scholarship Exhibition at the Castle of Good Hope in August 2008. The exhibition is an integral part of the South Africa-Mali Project. The exhibition, co-hosted by the Department of Arts and Culture and the Iziko Museums of Cape Town, highlighted the heritage value of the manuscripts, especially in their conservation.

Other projects underway are the 1981 Matola Raid Memorial in Maputo, Mozambique; the rehabilitation and development of the Lock Street women's prison in East London into a museum; the development of the former apartheid state security site Vlakplaas into a heritage memorial site; and the OR Tambo Memorial Project in Bizana in the Eastern Cape.

Arts and culture organisations

The following organisations play an active role in preserving and promoting South Africa's arts and culture:

- National Heritage Council
- South African Heritage Resources Agency
- South African Geographical Names Council
- National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)
- arts institutions such as the State Theatre in Pretoria, Playhouse Company in Durban, Artscape in Cape Town, Market Theatre in Johannesburg, Performing Arts Centre of the Free State in Bloemfontein and the Windybrow Theatre in Johannesburg
- Business and Arts South Africa
- Arts and Culture Trust.

Cultural industries

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries.

The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking by

The 14th annual South African Music Awards ceremony took place in May 2008. Categories and winners included:

- Album of the year: Freshlyground – *Macheri*
- Best Male Solo Artist: Hip Hop Pantsula – *Acceptance Speech*
- Best Female Solo: Karen Zoid – *Postmodern World*
- Best Duo/Group: Freshlyground – *Macheri*
- MTN Record of the Year: DJ Sdunkero – *Maputo Song.*

developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this sector the fifth-largest economic sector, comprising design, performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

Cultural tourism

Cultural festivals, African-cuisine projects, cultural villages, heritage routes and story-telling are areas that can benefit from South Africa's booming tourism industry.

Arts festivals

The Department of Arts and Culture provides financial support to various arts and culture festivals.

The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.

In 2009 and 2010, the festival will be extended to cater for soccer fans visiting the Eastern Cape for the Confederations Cup and the Soccer World Cup.

Other major festivals are held in Oudtshoorn, Johannesburg, Durban, Cape Town, Potchefstroom and Bloemfontein.

Theatre

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as being unique and of top quality.

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

In November 2008, South Africa's Goodwill Ambassador, Miriam Makeba, passed away after performing in Rome. "Mama Afrika" was one of the country's biggest singing talents and apartheid pioneers.

Music

While local music styles such as South African jazz have influenced African and world music for decades, gospel and kwaito are the most popular and most recorded styles today.

Kwaito combines elements of rap, reggae, hip-hop and other styles into a distinctly South African sound.

Orchestras

The NAC is responsible for funding the KwaZulu-Natal, Cape and Gauteng orchestras as well as the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Dance

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre, to the completely unconventional. Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and everyday life.

The Dance Factory in Johannesburg provides a permanent platform for all kinds of dance and movement groups, while the Wits (University) Theatre is home to the annual Dance Umbrella, a showcase for new work.

The Cape Town City Ballet is the oldest ballet company in the country.

Visual arts

South Africa has a range of art galleries that showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest. These include, among other things, collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of

In February 2008, Ben Schoeman became the first South African to win the Unisa international piano competition.

Pretoria and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of Durban-Westville.

The Department of Arts and Culture is supporting women in the area of visual arts. In August 2008, it awarded female artists for excellence in this field. There was also an exhibition by women at Museum Africa.

The Department of Arts and Culture will be embarking on a audit of the visual arts sector to identify areas for skills training, job creation and policy development.

The Visual Century Project, conceived by the South African-born CEO of the National Arts Gallery in Oslo, Norway, is undertaking research on the visual arts in South Africa over the last century. The project will involve exhibitions at all major galleries, publications and documentary films.

Crafts

According to the Department of Trade and Industry, South Africa's craft subsector alone contributes about R2 billion or 0,14% to South Africa's gross domestic product annually, providing jobs and income for around 38 000 people through at least 7 000 small enterprises.

The South African craft sector is developing in leaps and bounds, clearly defining its positioning as an important second economy. Its growth areas largely create jobs and opportunities for rural and inner-city urban women in South Africa.

In 2008, Marlene Dumas, one of the highest-paid living female artists in the world, returned to South Africa, her birth country, with an exhibition portraying her life's work. The exhibition, called *Intimate Relations*, was her first solo exhibition in South Africa. Consisting of more than 50 works – paintings, drawings and prints – the collection dated from her student years at the Michaelis School of Art at the University of Cape Town, with excerpts from letters, documents and photographs collected by Dumas.

She also produced works specifically for the exhibition. She is also a writer, commenting on art, culture and politics.

The Annual Beautiful Things Craft Supermarket continues to provide market access for this young industry. The Department of Arts and Culture Craft Emporium and retail outlets will provide yet another platform for craft development.

Film

Film production is actively supported by government; just one initiative is the Location Film and Television Scheme introduced by the Department of Trade and Industry.

South Africa offers foreign producers world-class film facilitation, logistics, talent and administration-management services.

Television production accounts for more than a third of total film/television revenue, with local-content quotas increasing the demand for programming.

The National Film and Video Foundation develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. It is also involved in the development of projects that appeal to targeted audiences and have greater commercial returns. The foundation disburses grants for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as bursaries for students from other countries. This ensures a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions.

In February 2008, the Soweto Gospel Choir won a Grammy Award in the category Best Traditional World Music for their album *African Spirit*.

The Grammy Awards ceremony took place at the Staples Centre in Los Angeles, United States of America (USA). Since its establishment in 2002, the Soweto Gospel Choir has performed in Australia, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, the USA, Europe and Singapore, becoming an international, multi-award-winning sensation.

It was again nominated for the 2009 Grammy Awards.

In February 2009, Ladysmith Black Mambazo won the Grammy Award for the best traditional world musc album.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and vibrant literary heritage and its writers are recognised and celebrated over the world. South Africa is the only country in sub-saharan Africa to boast two laureates for literature, namely JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer.

The net turnover of the book sector was estimated at about R5 billion in 2007. This included about R3,2 billion earned through publishing and R1,8 billion from book sales.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms throughout the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. There are regular platforms created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The current generation of writers is also making its mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker having their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish. The youngest winner of the Noma Award, the most coveted literary award on the continent, is Lebogang Mashile, a vibrant South African poetess. A young writer from KwaZulu-Natal, John van der Ruit, debuted with *Spud* in 2005, a novel that sold more than 130 000 copies in less than three years, thus breaking all records for a South African novel.

The Department of Arts and Culture has launched the Indigenous Literature Publishing Project, aimed at producing a series of publications in different languages, by writers from different backgrounds across South Africa. This project aims to stimulate the growth and development of literature in indigenous languages and generate new readerships.

The National Library of South Africa (NLSA) has been tasked with republishing out-of-print African-language classics by exploring the creation of partnerships with private companies.

Museums

More than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are in South Africa. The Department of Arts and Culture subsidises most museums, which are otherwise autonomous.

The department pays an annual subsidy to 13 national museums, ensuring the preservation of artefacts and collections that are important to all South Africans.

The Time of the Writer International Writers Festival was held from 25 to 30 March 2008, in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal.

With a line-up of 18 new and established writers, predominantly from South Africa and elsewhere on the African continent, the festival provided a stimulating platform for dialogue and exchange between writers, and an opportunity for the public to gain insight into the creative processes and perspectives, which inform their writing.

National Library of South Africa

The Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, unveiled the new home for the NLSA on 1 August 2008, in Pretoria. Some R300 million was spent on the new building, which seats 1 300. The building covers 33 000m ^{2}.

National anthem

The national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika (God bless Africa)* and *The Call of South Africa (Die Stem).*

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

ARTS AND CULTURE

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are:

National animal:
Springbok

National bird:
Blue Crane

National fish:
Galjoen

National flower:
King Protea

National tree:
Real Yellowwood

National orders

South Africa's national orders are:

The Order of the Baobab

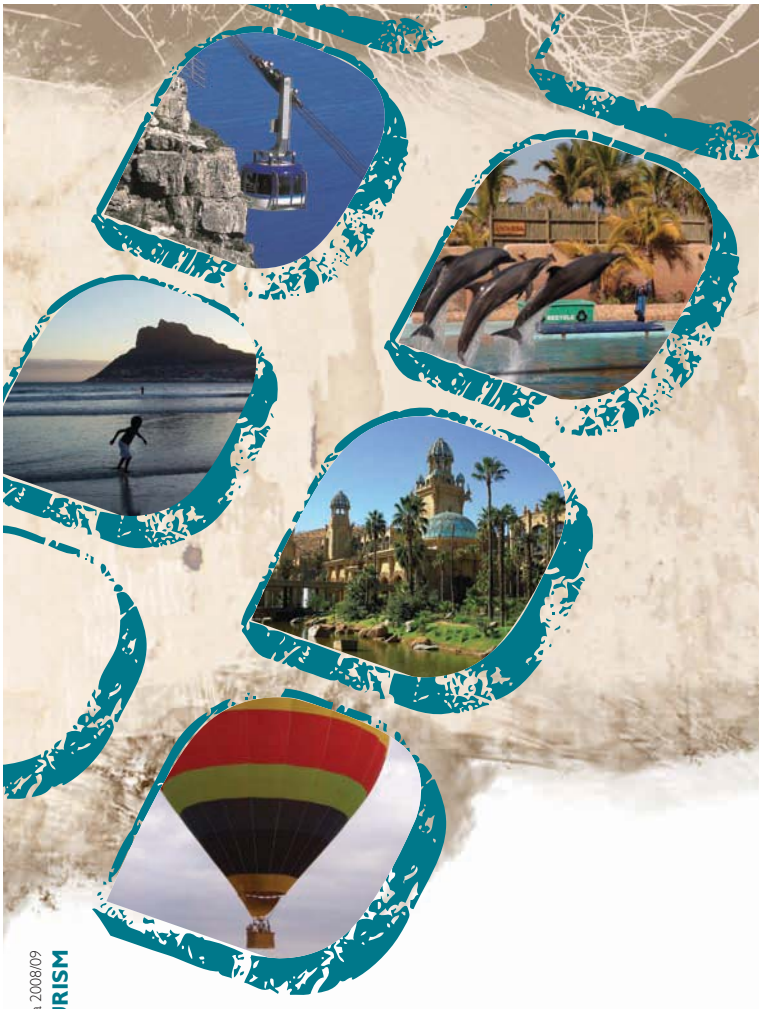
The Order of Mapungubwe

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order of Luthuli

The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order of Ikhamanga



Often described as “a world in one country”, South Africa offers the visitor a breathtaking variety of scenery, from desert and lush forest, to soaring mountains and vast empty plains.

TOURISM

Culturally as diverse as the landscape, many visitors are drawn to experience for themselves the miracle of the peaceful overthrow of apartheid. Others are attracted by the endless golden beaches, big game, and activities such as diving and snorkelling, or bird-watching. Whatever their reasons, visitors will find South Africa positively inviting, with world-class infrastructure, transport and accommodation.

The contribution of tourism to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) increased from R137,6 billion in 2006 to R159,6 billion in 2007.

Almost 5,5 million foreign tourists visited South Africa in the first seven months of 2008, a 7,8% increase over the 5,1 million foreigners who visited the country in the same period in 2007.

In celebration of 60 years of publishing in South Africa, the June 2008 edition of *Reader's Digest South Africa* featured reasons for South Africans to remember why this country is unique.

To name a few:

- At last count, 91 streets all over the world are named after former President Nelson Mandela. At 295 metres, the Nelson Mandela Bridge in Johannesburg is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa. Dr Mandela has been honoured in many ways, with everything from spiders to nuclear particles, universities and scholarships bearing his name.
- The entrance to South Africa's Parliament is given warmth and character thanks to a 120-metre Keiskamma Tapestry, the work of 100 previously unemployed women.
- Rooibos is a uniquely South African product exported export all over the world.
- Mpumalanga's Graskop offers the world's highest cable gorge swing.
- The Sagole Baobab in Limpopo and an Indian rubber tree in Cape Town share the title of South Africa's biggest tree.
- The Erica, *E. recurvata,* is a plant that had not been seen for over 200 years. It was re-discovered in the crevice of a rock in 2007.
- Only two centimetres long, the micro frog is found in Betty's Bay and Kenilworth in Cape Town.

The number of jobs created directly and indirectly in the economy through tourism increased by 5% from 896 900 in 2006 to 941 000 in 2007.

Analysis of the arrival figures for January to July 2008 showed that growth from South Africa's traditional tourist markets remained strong, boosted by increases in arrivals from new markets. North America recorded an increase of 11,7% compared to the first seven months of 2007. The figures for Europe showed growth of 7,3%, with France recording an increase of 16,8%. Arrivals from Australasia grew by 10,9% and Asia showed an increase of 5%.

Tourism has the potential to achieve Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) goals, which are to boost economic growth to 6% by 2010 and halve poverty and unemployment by 2014. The strategy has identified tourism as one of the key economic sectors, with excellent potential for growth. As part of the growth platform targeted by AsgiSA, tourism has been set some very steep goals for the next five years: 500 000 new jobs; 8,5 million international arrivals annually; and a contribution to GDP of at least R100 billion a year.

Travel formalities

- Foreign visitors should check before arriving whether a visa is required. Visas are free of charge.
- Visitors must have at least one blank page in their passports.
- Tourists must have return or onward tickets.
- Visitors from yellow-fever areas must have proof of inoculation.
- Foreign tourists may have their value-added tax refunded upon departure.
- For safety, emergency and other information, tourists can phone 083 123 2345 (24 hours a day) when they are in South Africa.

2010 host cities

Bloemfontein

Bloemfontein is the judicial capital of South Africa, the provincial capital of the Free State and the largest urban centre in the Mangaung Local Municipality. Bloemfontein is popularly known as "The City of Roses", owing to the abundance of these flowers and the annual rose festival held there.

Cape Town

Cape Town is known for its beaches, sports, mountain walks, day-trips, wine-tasting, sunsets and fine dining. Cape Town is the provincial capital of the Western Cape and the legislative capital of South Africa. Cape Town is the economic hub of the Western Cape. It also has the primary harbour and airport in the Western Cape.

Durban

Durban, South Africa's third-largest city in area, is an exciting hub around a busy harbour on the edge of the warm Indian Ocean. The city is well known for its pleasant climate and welcoming beaches. It also boasts top sporting facilities, world-class resorts and nature reserves. Its port is the busiest in South Africa, and the busiest container port in the southern hemisphere.

Johannesburg

Johannesburg lies in Gauteng, the wealthiest province in South Africa and forms part of the City of Johannesburg municipality. Locals have nicknamed the most populous city in South Africa "Joburg", "Jozi" and "eGoli". The City of Johannesburg is one of the largest metropolitan areas in the world, with a population of just over three million people.

Nelspruit

Nelspruit, the capital city of Mpumalanga, is nestled on the Crocodile River, about 60 km west of Mozambique. Mpumalanga (which means "The Place of the Rising Sun") is the primary gateway

to the Greater Limpopo Transfrontier Park, which stretches over three countries and encompasses global wilderness icons such as the more than 100-year-old Kruger National Park. With its subtropical climate, abundant sunshine and lush hills and valleys, Nelspruit forms the ideal base from which to explore Mpumalanga.

Top 10 tourist attractions
1. Kruger National Park
2. Table Mountain
3. Garden Route
4. Cape Town's Victoria & Alfred Waterfront
5. Robben Island
6. Beaches
7. Sun City
8. Cultural Village
9. Soweto
10.The Cradle of Humankind

Source: SA Venues

Polokwane

Polokwane is the capital city of Limpopo. It is the largest city in the north and a major economic centre. Wide streets, jacaranda trees, colourful parks and sparkling fountains characterise the city.

Polokwane, which means "A Place of Safety", is situated 60 km south of the Tropic of Capricorn and is home to just over 500 000 people. It encompasses the vibrant communities of Seshego, Mankweng and other surrounding townships.

Port Elizabeth

Port Elizabeth is one of South Africa's important sea ports. The city, the largest in the Eastern Cape, lies on the south-eastern coastline of South Africa. It is known for its sunshine, temperate climate, exhilarating sea breezes and magnificent golden beaches.

The city forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Municipality, which unites Uitenhage and Despatch and is named after South Africa's former President, humanitarian and world icon, Nelson Rolihlahla Mandela, who was born and spent his formative years in the Eastern Cape.

Pretoria

Pretoria is a progressive city whose charm lies in its harmonious blend of African roots and European traditions. It is a city where history meets 21st century style and development, and where vibrant township scenes complement modern shopping centres. Pretoria is an important industrial centre, with heavy industries, including iron and steel casting as well as automobile, railroad and machinery manufacture.

The city has the second-largest number of embassies in the world after Washington, DC. It serves as the executive (administrative) capital of the country.

Rustenburg

Rustenburg is a large town situated at the foot of the Magalies mountain range in the North West. Just outside the town are the largest platinum mines in the world and the largest platinum refinery, which processes about 70% of the world's platinum. The town is surrounded by fertile farming land.

Tourism in the provinces

Western Cape

The Western Cape continues to be one of the destinations most favoured by foreigners. Everyone wants to see Cape Town, one of the world's most beautiful cities.

Some attractions in Cape Town are:

- the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
- the Company's Gardens
- the District Six Museum
- the houses of Parliament and the South African National Gallery
- a boat trip to Robben Island, the place where former President Nelson Mandela spent most of his 27 years in jail.

South Africa is home to the world's largest individually timed cycle race (the Cape *Argus* Cycle Race), the world's largest open-water swim (the Midmar Mile) and the world's largest ultra-marathon (the Comrades Marathon).

In July 2008, a survey by a top United States of America (USA) travel magazine revealed that American tourists rated Cape Town as their third-favourite city in the world.

According to South African Tourism, in 2006 alone, the Western Cape welcomed 145 211 visitors from the USA. This was an increase of 19,64% from the previous year.

The Americans also voted Singita Boulders Lodge in the Sabi Sands Game Reserve, adjacent to the Kruger National Park, as the top hotel in the world. Cape Town's Cape Grace Hotel was placed 22nd in the same category.

Table Mountain is a popular site for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly "Mother City". The top of the mountain can be reached by an ultramodern cableway.

Newlands is home to the world-renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden and a well-known rugby stadium.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites, namely: Robben Island, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park (formerly the Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park), uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Mapungubwe, Sterkfontein Cradle of Humankind, the Cape Floral Kingdom, the Vredefort Dome and the Richtersveld cultural and botanical landscape.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. The park has a marine protected area encompassing almost 1 000 km².

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour, seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal island, and a harbour-front emporium that attracts many visitors.

The wine routes outside Cape Town offer the chance to taste first-class wines in arguably the most beautiful winelands in the world. Superb accommodation is available in historic towns such as Paarl, Stellenbosch and Franschhoek, as well as on many estates and farms.

Adventures by Disney has chosen South Africa as one of eight new destinations for its list of family-friendly adventures in locations around the world in 2009. Launched in 2005, Adventures by Disney offers guided family-vacation experiences to destinations in Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Australia.

Adventures by Disney's 12-day, 11-night South African trip starts in Cape Town before visiting the Western Cape Garden Route, and the towns of George and Knysna and venturing into safari country at Kapama Game Reserve next to the Kruger National Park. Families are accompanied from start to finish by two Disney-trained adventure guides, who are experts on their destination. Also on offer in 2009 is an even more luxurious version of the standard itinerary on two Adventures by Disney tours – one being the South Africa trip. Known as Disney Signature Trips, these will offer an enhanced travel experience, including upgraded accommodation, special amenities and events not offered on standard departures.

Garden Route

The Garden Route has well-developed tourist infrastructure, spectacular scenery and a temperate climate, making the region popular all year round.

Not to be missed

- The city of George is at the heart of the Garden Route and the mecca of golf in the southern Cape. It is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate.

- Knysna, nestling on an estuary, is one of South Africa's favourite destinations, famous for its indigenous forests, lakes and beaches.
- Just 29 km from Oudtshoorn, the ostrich-feather capital of the world, at the start of the Cango Valley lie the Cango Caves, the only show caves in Africa that offer a choice of tours in various languages. The remarkable caves are a series of 30 spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. The cave system is 5,3 km long.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo forms part of one of the world's most interesting and unique arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land, with the richest desert flora in the world, also has the world's largest variety of succulents.

Key attractions

- Matjiesfontein, a tiny railway village in the Karoo, offers tourists a peek into the splendour of colonial Victorian South Africa.
- Prince Albert is a well-preserved town, which nestles at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. The Fransie Pienaar Museum offers interesting cultural-history displays, a fossil room and an exhibit of gold-mining activities in the 19th century.
- The museum in Beaufort West, birthplace of heart surgeon Prof. Chris Barnard, depicts the story of the world's first heart transplant. The Karoo National Park on the outskirts of the town is also worth a visit.

Northern Cape

The Augrabies Falls National Park, with its magnificent falls pressing through a narrow rock ravine, remains the main attraction of the Northern Cape. Game drives reveal a variety of birdlife and animals such as klipspringer, steenbok, wild cats and otters.

Key attractions

- The Kimberley Mine Museum is South Africa's largest full-scale open-air museum. Underground mine tours are a big attrac-

tion. The Freddy Tate Golf Museum at the Kimberley Golf Club was the first golfing museum in Africa. The Kimberley Ghost Trail has become a popular tourist attraction.

- The Robert Sobukwe House in Galeshewe was once the residence of Robert Sobukwe, an important figure in South African history and a major role-player in the rise of African political consciousness.
- The Orange River Wine Cellars Co-op in Upington offers wine-tastings and cellar tours. The South African Dried Fruit Co-operative is the second-largest in the world.
- Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place, featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, whose son-in-law was explorer David Livingstone.
- Namaqualand, the land of the Nama and San people, puts on a spectacular show in spring when its floral splendour covers vast tracts of desert in a riot of colour.
- A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.
- The 100-m high, 9-km long, and 2-km wide white sand dune at the Witsand Nature Reserve near Postmasburg should not be missed.

In the second quarter of 2008, the total income for the accommodation industry increased by 33,5%, which represented some R1 144,1 million.

The number of stay units available during the second quarter of 2008 increased by 0,4% compared to the second quarter of 2007.

The occupancy rate during the second quarter of 2008 increased by 10,8% (to 51,5%) compared to the second quarter of 2007.

Free State

In the capital, Bloemfontein, the Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building) was built in 1849 as a school and is the city's oldest surviving building that is still in its original condition. It is still used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Not to be missed

- Clarens, the jewel of the Free State, is surrounded by spectacular scenery and boasts many art galleries.
- The Golden Gate Highlands National Park outside Clarens has beautiful sandstone rock formations.
- The King's Park Rose Garden in Bloemfontein boasts more than 4 000 rose bushes.
- The Vredefort Dome, a world heritage site, is the oldest and largest meteorite impact site in the world. It was formed about two billion years ago when a giant meteorite hit Earth.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape is the only province in South Africa, and one of the few places on Earth, where all seven biomes (major vegetation types) converge.

What to see and do

- the rugged beauty of the Wild Coast, including Hole-in-the-Wall
- Port Elizabeth, the sunshine capital of the Eastern Cape, with its friendly people and excellent beaches
- the Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton, Port Elizabeth – winner of three international awards

In December 2008, Shamwari Game Reserve, a five-star game reserve situated near Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, was awarded two top international awards at the grand finale of the prestigious World Travel Awards (WTA) Ceremony held in Turks and Caicos Island in the Caribbean.

Shamwari Game Reserve received the World's Leading Safari and Game Reserve Award for 2008 for the 11th consecutive year.

The first WTA Green Awards were also announced at this grand event, and Shamwari Game Reserve walked away with the World's Leading Conservation Company for 2008.

- the Tsitsikamma National Park, forests and rivers
- East London, South Africa's only river port, originally established as a supply port to serve the British military headquarters at King William's Town
- the village of Qunu, former President Mandela's childhood home
- the world's highest bungee jump (216 m) at the Bloukrans Bridge over the Storms River
- outstanding and varied game reserves, including the Addo Elephant, Mountain Zebra and Mkambati parks.

Limpopo

Limpopo is well endowed with cultural diversity, historical sites and tourist attractions, and is an excellent destination for get-away-from-it-all luxury holidays in the bush.

Not to be missed

- The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum offers a fine cultural-historical collection, while the Makapan caves are famous for their fossils. The Makapan Valley is the only cultural-heritage site of its kind. It reflects the history of the Ndebele people and resistance wars dating back 151 years. The fossil hominid sites of Sterkfontein include Makapan Valley.
- With its outstanding game reserves, the Thabazimbi district is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in South Africa.
- Bela-Bela is well known among South Africans, and increasingly foreigners, for its hot-water springs, fun water slides and scenery.
- The Waterberg mountain range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands, birdlife and dramatic vistas.
- The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who inspired Rider Haggard's *She*.
- Phalaborwa has one of the country's top-rated golf courses – just watch out for animals on the fairways.

- The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, a short drive west of Makhado, are built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depict their lifestyle in the mid-18th century.
- the Big Tree in the Mutale district is one of the largest known baobabs in southern Africa.

North West

The province abounds with attractions, including wild animals and fun nights at the famous Sun City and Lost City resorts.

Key attractions

- The Historic Route of Mafikeng includes the town of Mafikeng, which was besieged by the Boers during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.
- The Groot Marico region, mampoer (moonshine) country, is associated with author Herman Charles Bosman.
- The Hartbeespoort Dam and surrounds are popular for weekend outings, yachting and golf.
- The Pilanesberg National Park supports over 7 000 head of game, including the Big Five, and 350 bird species.
- Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are hugely popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, water sport and an artificial sea.
- The Taung skull fossil site is an extension of the Sterkfontein hominid sites. The site marks the place where the celebrated Taung skull – a specimen of the species *Australopithecus africanus* – was found in 1924.
- Madikwe Game Reserve, one of South Africa's largest game reserves, is home to 66 large mammal species, including the Big Five, and about 300 resident and migrant bird species.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – the place where the sun rises – lies in the north-eastern part of South Africa, bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south-east. Scenic beauty and wildlife are abundant.

Tourist attractions

- Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark the lives of the characters who came to Mpumalanga seeking their fortune. The town of Pilgrim's Rest is a living monument reflecting the region's gold-fever period.
- The Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve near Graskop has striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants.
- Within the Blyde River Canyon Nature Reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water. The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment. It is the world's third-largest canyon and the only green canyon.
- The region includes the southern section of the Kruger National Park, which draws a million visitors yearly.
- An annual frog-watching festival is held at Chrissiesmeer, South Africa's largest freshwater lake.
- Dullstroom is popular with trout- and fly-fishing enthusiasts.

The Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP) is a public-private partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the Business Trust. The TEP facilitates the growth of tourism small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) by establishing linkages between SMMEs and larger customers.

By the end of 2007, 4 166 SMMEs had been empowered through the establishment of business linkages, as well as training in the development of business and marketing plans. The value of linkages created for SMMEs amounted to R3,4 billion by the end of 2007.

Gauteng

Gauteng, the economic heart of southern Africa, offers a vibrant business environment and many tourist attractions, including a rainbow of ecological and cultural diversity.

Key attractions

- The Vaal Dam covers some 300 km^2 and is a popular venue for water sport. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam is also popular with birders and anglers.

- The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the skull of the famous Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil; and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton of more than 3,3 million years old.
- The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70-m high waterfall, stunning indigenous plant displays and a breeding pair of black eagles.
- There is a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high just 40 km north of Pretoria. These hills are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater, left by an asteroid 200 000 years ago.
- The National Zoological Gardens in Pretoria is considered one of the 10 best in the world.
- The Constitution Hill Precinct is set to become one of South Africa's most popular landmarks.
- The old mining town of Cullinan is where the world's biggest diamond, the 3 106-carat Cullinan diamond, was found.
- A guided tour of Soweto leaves a lasting impression of this vast community's life and struggle against apartheid.
- The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg tells the story of the legacy of apartheid through photographs, film and artefacts.

Three South African lodges were included in the 2008 *National Geographic Adventure*'s list of 50 top eco-lodges. Phinda Private Game Reserve, Tswalu Kalahari Reserve and Bushmans Kloof Wilderness Reserve took their place among the top environmentally friendly tourism destinations in the world.

Of the 50 establishments recognised as the most Earth-friendly, 17 were in Africa. Four were in Kenya, with two each in Namibia, Botswana and Tanzania, and one each in Mozambique, Seychelles, Egypt and Morocco.

An eco-lodge is a nature-dependent tourist lodge that meets the philosophy and principles of ecotourism. Eco-lodges are establishments that focus strongly on a greener way of operating, including the support of local communities, the creation of far-reaching conservation initiatives, and a firm emphasis on adventure.

- The Union Buildings in Pretoria was the venue for the inauguration of presidents Nelson Mandela and Thabo Mbeki.

KwaZulu-Natal

Also known as the Zulu Kingdom, KwaZulu-Natal is a combination of natural wonders, fascinating culture and ultra-modern facilities. Durban's Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Drawcards include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

Enticing attractions

- The uShaka Marine World theme park comprises an oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute situated on Durban's Point.
- Spot dolphins or laze the days away on the coastline between the Umdloti and Tugela rivers – the Dolphin Coast.
- The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, one of the largest game parks in South Africa, is home to the Big Five, as well as cheetah and wild dogs.

Did you know?

- South Africa has the third-highest level of biodiversity in the world.
- The three-billion-year-old rocks around Barberton, Mpumalanga, are among the oldest in the world.
- The 850-m high Tugela Falls is the second-highest waterfall in the world.
- Most of the globe's proto-mammalian fossils are found in the Karoo, which has also yielded a 280-million-year-old fossilised shark.
- Known for its astronomy observatory, the Karoo town of Sutherland is one of the most geologically stable places on Earth, yet has a 66-million-year-old volcano that is not officially extinct.
- The Free State town of Jagersfontein has the deepest vertical man-made hole in the world.
- The world's smallest succulent plants (less than 10 mm) and the largest – the Baobab tree – are found in South Africa.

- South Africa is ranked first in the world for its floral kingdom.
- The number of "dollar millionaires" in South Africa increased from less than 25 000 in 2004 to over 55 000 in 2007, according to the *World Wealth Report*.
- The first MBA programme outside of the United States of America (USA) was started by the University of Pretoria in 1949.
- South Africa ranked 44th out of 131 countries in the World Economic Forum's (WEF) *Global Competitiveness Report* 2007/08.
- Three South African cities were voted among the world's Top 100 Most Liveable Cities in a study conducted by Mercer Human Resource Consulting. Cape Town was ranked in 85th place, Johannesburg 90th and Port Elizabeth 97th.
- South Africa is ranked 20th out of a total of 128 economies in the WEF's *Global Gender Gap Report 2007*, ahead of many developed nations, including the USA (31), Switzerland (40), Austria (27) and France (51).
- South Africa is ranked 35th out of 178 countries for ease of doing business – ahead of Spain, Brazil and India – according to *Doing Business 2008*, a joint publication of the World Bank and the International Finance Corporation.
- Cape Town has the fifth-best blue sky in the world according to the United Kingdom's National Physical Laboratory.
- South African media ranks 26th out of 167 countries in the *Worldwide Press Freedom Index 2007*, higher than any country in Asia, the Middle East or South America, and ahead of Japan, Spain, Italy and the USA.

Source: *South Africa The Good News*

- The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, and the Valley of Zulu Kings give visitors insight into the Zulu nation's history and culture.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park (formerly the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park) is one of the highest forested dunes in the world, and has an abundance of fish and birds.
- The Banana Express runs between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast.

- The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Tugela falls.
- The Battlefields Route in northern KwaZulu-Natal has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.
- Every year around June or July, millions of sardines leave their home on the Agulhas banks and move up to the coast of Mozambique. Thousands of dolphins, Cape gannets, sharks and game fish follow the "sardine run" northwards.

Things to see and do in South Africa

Just a few of the attractions that make South Africa an exceptional destination:

- breathtaking Cape Town with its laid-back, welcoming attitude and vibrant nightlife, nestling at the foot of Table Mountain
- Cape Point
- the delights of Sun City and the Lost City, and many other first-rate casino resorts
- walking in the spectacular Drakensberg mountains
- the chance to learn how to say "hello" in 11 official languages
- the country's Blue Flag beaches
- the variety of national parks and transfrontier conservation areas
- seven world heritage sites
- the lilac-breasted roller, the blue crane and the other 900 bird species to be spotted in southern Africa
- the Big Five and other wild animals found in the many parks and game reserves
- the strange halfmens (half-human) and the exotic baobab, just some of South Africa's many amazing trees and plants
- battlefields on which imperial Britain fought Zulus, Xhosas and Boers
- the dazzling floral displays which carpet Namaqualand yearly
- the mountains, forests and beaches of the Garden Route
- the silence and solitude of the Karoo's wide-open spaces

- country hospitality (and home cooking) in hundreds of picturesque towns and villages across South Africa
- the endless golden beaches of the Eastern Cape
- fly-fishing in stunning scenery with first-class accommodation
- fabulous golf courses that produced the likes of Gary Player, Ernie Els and Retief Goosen
- an array of cultural villages, arts festivals, rock paintings and museums
- the adrenaline rush of the many adventure-tourism opportunities available in the country.

The Department of Health promotes the health of all South Africans through a caring and effective national health system (NHS) based on the primary healthcare (PHC) approach.

In 1994, government started providing free PHC services for children under six years old, and pregnant and lactating women.

During the same period, government initiated a programme that resulted in more than 1 600 clinics being built.

Where necessary, patients with complications are referred to higher levels of care, such as hospitals.

PHC services include immunisation, communicable and endemic disease prevention, maternity care, screening of children, integrated management of childhood illnesses and child healthcare, health promotion, counselling, management of chronic diseases and diseases of older persons, rehabilitation, accident and emergency services, family planning and oral health. By mid-2008, PHC workers at about 70% of health facilities had been trained in the Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI).

Districts countrywide are integrating mental health and substance abuse into their PHC services.

Health-delivery system

The major emphasis in developing health services at provincial level has been the shift from curative, hospital-based healthcare to health services provided in an integrated, community-based manner. Patients in provincial hospitals pay for examinations and treatment in accordance with their income and number of dependants. A provincial government may partly or entirely finance patients' treatment.

Clinics

A network of mobile clinics run by government forms the backbone of primary and preventive healthcare.

Hospitals

Hospital management is being strengthened in various ways in all nine provinces. In 2007/08, the Department of Health planned to ensure that at least 50% of hospital managers enrolled in a formal hospital management-training programme.

The Hospital Revitalisation Programme entered its sixth year in 2008, and continues to illustrate the importance of an integrated strategy for improving health-service delivery.

The programme includes improving infrastructure, health technology (equipment), quality of care, management and organisational development within targeted hospitals in the programme. Since 2005/06, three new hospitals have been opened, bringing to eight the number of new hospitals.

These are George Hospital in Western Cape, Madikana ka Zulu Memorial Hospital in Eastern Cape and Lebowakgomo Hospital in Limpopo. An additional three hospitals were expected to be completed by 2008/09. These are Dilokong and Nkhensani hospitals in Limpopo and Barkley West Hospital in the Northern Cape.

Emergency medical services (EMS)

Although provinces run their own EMS, including ambulance services, training is standardised nationally.

Private ambulance services also serve the community. Some of these also render aeromedical services.

The Department of Health has developed a national EMS plan for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Some R8 million is being invested to upgrade emergency centres designated for the World Cup.

Policy

By promoting a healthy lifestyle, the NHS aims to improve public health through disease prevention.

It also strives to consistently improve the healthcare-delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

Given that health needs will always outstrip available resources, the health sector identifies key priorities for each planning cycle.

The strategic priorities for 2008/09 were to:

- strengthen health programmes
- sustain quality improvement by developing and implementing health-facility improvement plans
- develop an integrated national health information system
- strengthen health financing, in particular increasing funding for the public health sector

- achieve further reduction in the prices of medicines and pharmaceutical products
- strengthen human resources for health
- strengthen international health relations
- improve management and communication.

The details are contained in the Annual National Health Plan as well as the Strategic Plan of the national Department of Health.

In August 2008, the Department of Health gazetted the Draft Policy on African Traditional Medicine (ATM) for comment by the public before it was adopted as an official policy guiding the practice of ATM in the country. The draft policy deals with and makes policy recommendations around the following key areas:

- legal and legislative framework: the draft policy calls for the incorporation of ATM into the country's health systems based on the large number of people who use it already
- education, training, research and development: the draft policy recommends that a National Institute of African Traditional Medicine (NIATM) be established to co-ordinate, undertake and provide leadership in the research of ATM
- cultivation and conservation of medicinal plants and animals: the draft policy proposes that the NIATM be responsible for ensuring the safety, quality and timely availability of ATM and raw material.

Healthy lifestyles

The Healthy Lifestyles Programme was launched to promote health and well-being among individuals, communities and populations, enabling them to address the broad determinations of health and to identify health-risk factors. The critical aspect of the programme is to address the onset and prevalence of non-communicable diseases; the dangers of obesity, unhealthy diet and physical inactiveness; successful ageing and mental health; and the contribution of alcohol abuse to non-natural deaths (violence, road accidents, drowning and injuries).

The last Friday of February each year has been declared Health Lifestyle Day for both South Africa and the continent.

South Africans' use of public healthcare services has almost doubled over the past eight years. The increase was due to improved access as a result of building some 1 600 clinics closer to communities, improved packages of care available at clinics and the removal of user fees.

The percentage of children under one year who complete their primary course of immunisation has increased at an annualised rate of 5% a year. In 2008, coverage stood at 85%, within reach of the 90% national target.

The average number of new cases of diarrhoea per 1 000 children under the age of five, dropped by more than half, from 258 in 2005 to 119 in 2006.

The *2006 Antenatal Survey* showed a decline for the first time in HIV prevalence, particularly among young people and that turberculosis cure rates were improving annually while defaulter rates were declining.

Health team

By December 2008, he core team of practising medical practioners in South Africa consists of:

- 44 971 registered medical and dental practitioners
- 46 305 emergency care personnel
- 10 948 pharmacists (2007).

Registered and enrolled nurses, 2007

	2007
Registered nurses and midwives	103 792
Enrolled nurses and midwives	40 582
Nursing auxiliaries	59 574
Students in training	15 258

Source: South African Nursing Council

South Africa has a shortage of certain health professionals such as physiotherapists, dieticians and radiographers.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa, with over 250 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local governments and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research appropriate to the needs of the broader population, including research into HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis (TB), malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition. The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines.

Medical schemes

In 2007, the number of beneficiaries covered by medical schemes increased by 5% to 7 478 040. These membership numbers exclude members of bargaining council schemes and the Motohealth Care Medical Scheme.

Membership of restricted schemes grew by 21,7% – this growth may be attributed to the Government Employees Medical Scheme, which increased its membership by more than 300% from 2006.

The contributions that schemes collected from their members increased by 12,3% to R64,7 billion, while the claims that schemes paid on behalf of their members rose by 10,2% to R56,3 billion from R51,1 billion in 2006. Contribution increases were higher for open schemes compared to restricted schemes.

Of the total amount they spent on healthcare, schemes paid R20,2 billion (36%) to hospitals. Expenditure on private hospitals increased by 12,5% to R19,9 billion in 2007. This increase was 5,3% when adjusted for inflation. The number of beneficiaries admitted to private hospitals increased to 180 per 1 000 beneficiaries from 171 per 1 000 in 2006.

Community health

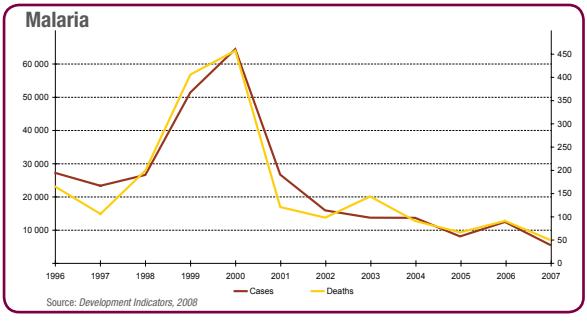
The most common communicable diseases in South Africa are TB, malaria, measles and sexually transmitted infections (STIs).

In South Africa, it is recommended that children under the age of five be immunised against the most common childhood diseases. Immunisation should be administered at birth; six, 10 and 14 weeks; nine months; 18 months and five years of age. Children are inoculated against polio, TB, diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, haemophilus influenzae type B, hepatitis B and measles.

In September 2008, the Department of Health introduced two new vaccines into its immunisation programme. This will assist in preventing deaths from pneumonia and diarrhoea.

Malaria is endemic to the low-altitude areas of Limpopo, Mpumalanga and north-eastern KwaZulu-Natal. About 10% of the population lives in malaria-risk areas. The highest-risk area is a strip of about 100 km along the Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland borders.

The number of malaria cases declined drastically over the past eight years from 51 444 in 1999 to 5 210 cases in 2007. Factors behind the decline include an increase in indoor residual spraying using DDT with an overall coverage of more than 80%. South Africa's collaboration with Swaziland, Mozambique and Zimbabwe – through cross-border malaria control initiatives – has contributed towards a decline in malaria cases.



Source: *Development Indicators, 2008*

South Africa was declared free of the Wild Poliovirus by the African Regional Certification Commission in 2006. This is a subcommitee of the independent Global Certification Commission that works closely with the World Health Organisation.

The number of children who have been confirmed by laboratory tests to have had measles in South Africa decreased from 829 in 2004 to only 31 in 2007 and there have been no deaths from measles in the last two years.

Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses

IMCI promotes child health and improves child survival as part of the National Plan of Action for Children. It is being instituted as part of the Department of Health's policy on the NHS for Universal Primary Care.

South Africa's nurses and doctors are well trained to treat all diseases by using the IMCI Strategy. Diseases such as pneumonia, malaria, meningitis, diarrhoea and malnutrition are easily managed. In South Africa, the IMCI Strategy has been adapted to include HIV assessment and classification.

The strategy tries to integrate all interventions relating to children to ensure that a package of care is offered to each child.

Tuberculosis

In 2007, there were more than 300 000 TB cases. Free testing is available at public clinics countrywide.

While the South African cure rate is improving, it is still below the cure rate of many developing countries.

The worst affected provinces are the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which contribute about 80% of the country's total TB burden.

On TB control and the implementation of the TB Strategic Plan, it is encouraging to note that 20% of South Africa's health facilities now have TB tracing teams as part of efforts to reduce the TB defaulter rate from 10% to 7% in line with the target set by government.

HIV and AIDS

The Department of Health has developed the National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS and STIs for 2007 to 2011, which builds on the gains of the Strategic Plan for 2000 to 2005.

The plan emphasises treatment and prevention. It also spells out clear, quantified targets, and places high priority on monitoring and evaluation.

The South African National AIDS Council (SANAC) has endorsed the plan. The primary goal of the NSP is to reduce the rate of new HIV infections and to mitigate the impact of AIDS on individuals, families and communities.

The plan aims to reduce new infections by 2011 and provides an appropriate package of treatment, care and support services.

The package provided by the plan includes counselling and testing services as an entry point; healthy lifestyle interventions, including nutritional support; treatment of opportunistic infections; antiretroviral (ARV) therapy; and monitoring, and evaluation to assess progress and share research.

The report acknowledges the efforts that are being made in the area of prevention by noting that some 96% of South African schools were providing life-skills-based HIV education in the last academic year. It also lists South Africa's Men in Partnership against Gender Violence, and the role of Soul City as one of the exemplary programmes on HIV prevention.

To consolidate these gains, government announced an allocation of an additional R350 million to a conditional grant for HIV and AIDS, which now stands at R2 585 billion for the 2008/09 financial year.

These funds will be transferred to provinces to further enhance the response to HIV and AIDS.

The treatment, care and support intervention is gaining momentum in line with government's commitment to deal with this challenge. By February 2008, at least 456 000 patients were receiving ARV treatment in all 407 government facilities providing this service. Of these 39 759 were children.

By June 2008, there were 16 accredited ARV sites in correctional services, with 4 294 offenders receiving ARV therapy.

The department has 86% of the subdistricts having at least one service point accredited to provide comprehensive care to people living with HIV and AIDS.

SANAC has served as an important platform for partnerships against AIDS.

HIV and AIDS vaccine research and development

The South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative was established in 1999 to develop and test an affordable, effective, and locally relevant HIV and AIDS vaccine for southern Africa.

Home- and community-based care (HCBC)

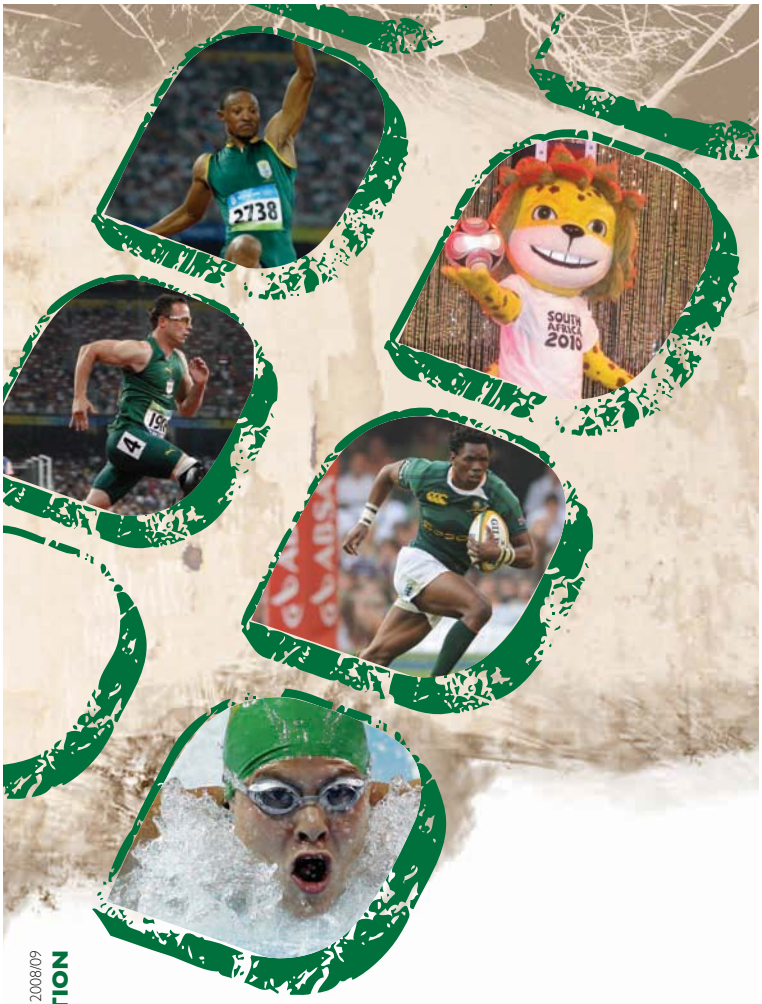
HCBC is a central tenet of the care component of the comprehensive response to HIV and AIDS. This service is provided mainly through non-governmental and community-based organisations.

The objective of the HCBC Programme is to ensure:

- access to care, and follow-up through a functional referral system
- that children and families who are affected and infected by HIV and AIDS access social-welfare services within their communities.

Some 30 050 community caregivers received stipends up to December 2007. Of these, 14 964 community caregivers received basic HCBC and Ancillary Healthcare National Qualifications Framework level one and two training. Some 1 145 270 beneficiaries received care and support services from April 2007 to December 2007.

By August 2008, government's programme on the establishment of food gardens was gaining momentum, with 6 390 schools having active gardens. It was acce-lerating plans regarding the implementation of the National School Nutrition Programme, with over six million children receiving meals in more than 18 000 public schools.



South Africans have more than made their mark in international sport.

SPORTS AND RECREATION

Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) aims to improve the quality of life of all South Africans by promoting participation in sport and recreation in the country, and through the participation of sportspeople and teams in international sporting events.

Sport has the potential to build social cohesion and national unity. South Africa was bound together when the country won the Rugby World Cup in 1995 and again in 2007, the African Cup of Nations in 1996 as well as when it won the right to host the 2010 World Cup in 2004.

Sport in South Africa is a multibillion-rand industry and contributes more than 2% to the country's gross domestic product.

The country has successfully hosted major international events, including the rugby, cricket and women's golf world cups and will be sure to impress when it hosts the Confederations Cup 2009 and the FIFA World Cup in 2010™.

Mass participation

The Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme (SMPP) is the cradle of community sports in South Africa. The programme was launched in 2005 to facilitate access to sport and recreation for as many South Africans as possible, especially those from historically disadvantaged communities.

The SRSA launched the programme with a budget of R20 million.

This has since increased to more than R290 million with the inclusion of school sport and legacy development. Hubs (geographical centres of activity within five kilometres' walking radius) increased from 36 to 451 in 2007, with over three million participants in various activities, ranging from indigenous games to rugby, soccer, netball, baseball, general gymnastics, hockey, aerobics, handball, boxing, cricket, swimming, dance sport, volleyball and basketball. The eventual aim is to ensure that no child has to walk more than five kilometres to access an activity hub anywhere in the country.

The idea is to establish at least one hub in every ward in every municipality across South Africa.

The SMPP is expected to enable the sport sector to contribute to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa. Research into the hubs indicates that small stipends given to youth trained as activity co-ordinators contributes to feeding up to eight families in some instances.

By mid-2007, the SMPP had trained more than 2 000 young volunteers in sport-and-recreation administration, over 1 500 entry-level coaches, more than 1 200 referees, and over 2 000 people in event management and first aid.

Indigenous games

The indigenous games are ugqaphu/kgati/ntimo, diketo/upuca/magave, morabaraba/mlabalaba, ncuva/ntijwa/tsoro/ tshimaya/moruba, dibeke/diwiki/snuka/skununu/umabhorisha, jukskei, kho-kho and lintonga/melamu/izinduku.

In 2008, no indigenous games festival was held as South Africa hosted the Zone VI U/20 Youth Games.

School sport

In 2005, the ministries of education and of sport and recreation signed a partnership agreement to resuscitate and revitalise school sports and Physical Education programmes. The SRSA has established the Directorate of School Sport within the Chief Directorate: Mass Participation. It consists of two sections: Competitive School Sport and Mass Participation in Schools Sport. It reaches about 1 600 schools nationally and focuses on capacity-building, providing sports equipment for use at events, sustaining the programme by suppporting local sports assistants and local leagues, and providing logistical support.

By mid-2008, a five-year school-sport programme, which was drafted for 2007 to 2011, and the co-ordinating structure were under review.

In September 2008, South Africa, Namibia, Swaziland and Botswana were represented in the Confederation of School Sport Associations of Southern Africa Ball Games Competition, which is held each year in a different Southern African Development Community (SADC) country.

The South African team walked away with four gold medals and one silver. The female teams did particularly well. Aside from the netball side, the basketball girls and boys teams and the boys volleyball teams won gold medals.

The SRSA contributed most of the cost of the team's participation, and played a leading role in the organising and managing the team.

2008 sports highlights

Paralympics

South Africa's paralympic team won 30 medals at the Paralympics in Beijing. Seventeen of those medals were gold. With 71% of South Africa's medals being gold, the team ended proudly in seventh place on the medal table. This is how the team performed:

- The "golden girl" was swimmer Natalie du Toit, who completed a clean sweep of victories in the five events she entered. She was named winner of the Whang Youn Dai Achievement Award.
- Oscar Pistorius won the T44 100 m and the 200 m and 400 m.
- Hilton Langenhoven struck gold twice; he scored a world record 3 401 points to win the men's P12 pentathlon and followed that by capturing gold in the long jump, with a Paralympic record leap of 7,31 m.
- Ilse Hayes joined Langenhoven and Fanie van der Merwe as winners when she recorded a distance of 5,68 m to win the F13 long jump.
- Teboho Mokgalagadi won bronze in the men's T35 100 m.
- Ernst van Dyk, competing in his fifth Paralympic Games, captured gold when he won the road race for hand cycling class C. He finished the 48,4-km distance in one hour, 21 minutes and 40 seconds.
- Phillipa Johnson won her second equestrian gold medal in the individual freestyle test grade four.
- David Roos picked up a silver medal in the men's F46 long jump.

- Fanie Lombard won bronze in the men's F42 shot put, with a distance of 13,87 m. He is the most successful South African athlete in the history of the Paralympics, with seven gold, two silver and two bronze medals.
- Gavin Kilpatrick and Michael Thomson secured bronze in the sprint for blind and vision-impaired athletes.
- Ernst van Dyk rounded off the Paralympics for South Africa with a bronze medal in the last event of the games when he finished third in the men's marathon T54.

Total medal count at the Paralympics 2008				
South Africa	Gold	Silver	Bronze	Total
	21	3	6	30

Athletics

- In March 2008, South Africa's Godfrey Mokoena won gold with a leap of 8,08 m in the long jump at the Athletics World Indoor Championships, in Valencia, Spain.
- In April 2008, South African wheelchair athlete Ernst van Dyk won the Boston Marathon race for a record seventh time. His time was one hour, 26 minutes and 49 seconds.

On 20 August 2008, Natalie du Toit made history when she took to the water in the women's 10-km open water swim at the Olympic Games in Beijing. Du Toit booked her place in the Olympic Games by finishing fourth in the 10-km event at the World Open Water Swimming Championships in Seville in May. She became the first amputee to qualify for the Olympic Games.

Godfrey Mokoena won South Africa's only medal at the 2008 Beijing Olympics in August when he clinched silver in the long jump.

- David Grier and Braam Malherbe became the first people to run around the entire coastline of South Africa. On 8 October 2008, they completed the "Cipla Spar Miles for Smiles Coastal Challenge" – a 100-day, 3 278-km run around the southern

SPORTS AND RECREATION

African coastline from Namibia's Oranjemund to Ponto Do Ouro in Mozambique.

In October 2008, President Kgalema Motlanthe awarded the Order of Ikhamanga: Category II Silver to:

- Bryan Habana: for excellent performance and contributing to the improvement of the game of rugby in South Africa
- Shaun Pollock: for excellent contribution to cricket in South Africa and being an inspiration to the South African cricket team
- Makhaya Ntini: for excellent achievement in cricket and serving as an inspiration to up-and-coming black South African cricketers for excellent achievement in the game of cricket
- Percy Montgomery: for excellent achievement in the game of rugby
- "Ace" Ntsoelengoe (posthumous): for his excellent achievement in the game of soccer locally and abroad and for contributing to the development of the game in South Africa.

Biking

- In August 2008, South African mountain bike downhill racer Greg Minnaar won the Mountain Bike World Cup in Canberra.
- A month later, Tyla Rattray won the Motocross World Title when he clinched the MX2 category championship at the Italian Grand Prix in Faenza.

Bowls

In January 2008, South Africa's triples combination of Lorna Trigwell, Loraine Victor and Sylvia Burns were crowned world champions in Christchurch, New Zealand, when they defeated Australia 15-11 in the final of the World Bowls Championships.

Canoeing and skiing

- In June 2008, Bridgitte Hartley won South Africa's first-ever gold medal at a sprinting World Cup regatta when she clinched the women's 1 000 m A-final in Poznan, Poland.
- In September 2008, South Africa's tradition of excellence in canoe marathon competitions was upheld at the World Cham-

pionships in the Czech Republic as the country won three medals, including gold in the men's K2 race. Ant Stott and Cam Schoeman won gold at the Rainbow Nation's challenge championships in the men's K2 competition, just a day after Stott had won a bronze medal in the K1 event.

Cricket

- After a 12-year international career, Shaun Pollock retired at the top, hitting the winning runs for South Africa in his final one-day international (ODI) match against the West Indies in February 2008.
- On 21 July 2008, South Africa beat England by 10 wickets in the second test at Headingley to take a 1-0 series lead in the battle for the Basil D'Oliviera Trophy.
- A month later, at Edgbaston, South Africa claimed victory by five wickets in the third test over England to secure a 2-0 lead in the four-match series.
- South Africa made history at the end of 2008 and beginning of 2009 when they beat Australia in the test and ODI Series Down Under.

Freediving

In August 2008, Cape Town-based free-diver Hanli Prinsloo excelled in the Nordic Deep Free-diving Competion held off the

South Africa has hosted a number of international sporting events since 1994:

- Rugby World Cup 1995
- African Cup of Nations 1996
- IAAF World Cup in Athletics 1998
- All Africa Games 1999
- Cricket World Cup 2003
- President's Cup 2003
- Women's World Cup of Golf 2005, 2006, 2007 and 2008
- Women's World Cup of Cricket 2005
- World Amateur Golf Championships 2006
- Twenty20 Cricket World Cup 2007.

west coast of Sweden, winning the competition and setting four new South African records in the process.

Golf

- In January 2008, James Kamte scored a history-making breakthrough victory with a five-birdie back nine to win the R1,8-million Dimension Data Pro- Am at the Gary Player Country Club. Kamte became the first black South African to record a victory on the tough Summer Swing of the Sunshine Tour.
- In March 2008, South Africa's Ernie Els rallied from three shots adrift to win the $5,5-million Honda Classic and end his United States (US) victory drought.
- A month later, Trevor Immelman survived a double-bogey at the 16th hole to become the first South African to win the US Masters in 30 years with a three-shot victory. Immelman followed in the footsteps of Gary Player to secure the prized green jacket with a three-over-par 75, matching the highest closing score by a Masters winner set by Arnold Palmer in 1962.
- In May 2008, Hennie Otto scored a victory in the Italian Open at the Castello di Tolcinasco Golf and Country Club in Milan on his European Tour.
- In October, Charl Schwartzel captured his third European Tour title and his second in Spain when he won the Madrid Masters by three shots with a total of 19-under-par 265.

The South African Government launched a website (*www.sa2010.gov.za*) to provide information on government preparations for the 2010 World Cup and to take advantage of the World Cup communication opportunity for the benefit of the country and continent.

The site provides an entry point to other sources of information about the country – such as progress of the stadiums, the South African Tourism and International Marketing Council gateway, and provincial and host-city websites. The site is complementary to the website of FIFA and the Organising Committee, and was conceived in consultation with FIFA.

- On 1 November, Retief Goosen captured the Asian Tour's Iskandar Johor Open in Malaysia, with a final round lifting him to a two-shot victory after he had entered the last day four shots off the pace.

Motor racing

- In February 2008, A1 Team South Africa's Adrian Zaugg produced a sensational drive in pouring rain to win the feature race at Eastern Creek just outside Sydney, Australia.

Rowing

- In January 2008, South Africans Bill Godfrey and Peter van Kets won the 2 500-nautical mile Atlantic Rowing Race. The event began on 2 December 2007 in San Sebastian, La Gomera, in the Canary Islands.
- In the same month, in South Africa's Dusi Canoe Marathon, Michael Mbanjwa became the first black winner in the 57-year history of the event.

Rugby

- In April 2008, South Africa's Sevens rugby team brought an end to New Zealand's season-long domination of the International Rugby Board World Sevens Series when Neil Powell's side beat the Kiwis 15-7 to clinch the Adelaide Sevens.
- On 12 July 2008, South Africa finally ended their decade-long run without a win on New Zealand soil with a 30-28 victory in the Tri-Nations Series.
- In June 2008, South Africa's Sevens rugby team claimed the Plate title at the Edinburgh Sevens, defeating Scotland 14-5.
- The month of June 2008 saw South Africa beating Wales twice.
- On 9 August, South Africa celebrated former President Nelson Mandela's 90th birthday by beating Argentina 63-9.
- Later the same month, South Africa beat Australia 53-8 in Johannesburg.
- The Springboks beat England 42-6 at Twickenham on 22 November 2008.

SPORTS AND RECREATION

Soccer

- In March 2008, Bafana Bafana scored a 3-0 victory over world number 26 Paraguay at the Super Stadium in Atteridgeville, outside Pretoria. In the process of scoring one of three Bafana goals, Benni McCarthy broke the South African scoring record he had previously held jointly with Shaun Bartlett by recording his 30th international goal.
- In June 2008, Bafana Bafana won 4-1 over Equatorial Guinea in a 2010 African Nations Cup qualifying match in Atteridgeville.
- In August 2008, South Africa beat Mozambique 2-1 to retain the Cosafa Cup (now renamed the "Cosafa Senior Challenge") in the final played at the Thulamahashe Stadium in Bushbuck Ridge.
- Bafana Bafana made it three wins in succession when they scored a 2-1 victory over Ghana in Bloemfontein in October 2008.
- In November 2008, Bafana Bafana kept their best performance of the year for last as they scored a dramatic 3-2 win over mighty Cameroon in a titanic Nelson Mandela challenge played at a packed Olympia Park.

Surfing

- In April 2008, Team South Africa continued its reign as the undisputed champions of world masters surfing by trumping the world's best 35-years-and-older surfers to win the overall team crown at the 2008 International Surfing Association World Surfing Championships in perfect waves at Punta Rocas in Peru. Led by individual gold medalists Heather Clark (masters women), Marc Wright (kahunas) and Chris Knutsen (grand kahunas), South Africa blew away the competition to take their second consecutive team world championship.
- In April 2008, South African Davey Weare surfed to victory against the USA's Austin Ware in excellent surf at Ansteys on the Bluff near Durban to capture the Quiksilver Pro Durban title.

Sailing

- In October 2008, South Africa's America's Cup Team Shosholoza was third across the finish line in a spectacular fleet of 2 000 yachts that competed in the 16-nautical mile Trieste Barcolana.

Swimming

- In February 2008, veteran swimmer Ram Barkai of Cape Town completed a "1 km-swim" in an Antarctic lake in life-threatening sub-zero air temperatures. Barkai's swim is considered the most southerly swim in the world as it took place at 70 degrees latitude. Barkai faced air temperatures of minus 10 degrees Celsius and a water temperature of one degree.
- In the same month, Suzaan van Biljon set a new championship record in the 200-m breaststroke, at the Fina World Short Course Championships in Manchester, United Kingdom. Van Biljon clocked two minutes, 18,73 seconds to lower the previous mark of two minutes, 20,22 seconds set in 1999 by Japan's Masami Tanaka.
- In September 2008, Roland Schoeman broke the 50-m freestyle world record at the Telkom South African Short Course Championships at the Delville Swimming Pool in Germiston. Schoeman powered his way to a world best of 20,64 seconds.

South African Sports Awards

The South African Sports Awards recognise and honour individuals and teams who have excelled both on and off the field each year. They are presented by the SRSA, the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc) and the SABC.

2008 Winners

SPORTS STAR OF THE YEAR
Natalie du Toit
NEWCOMER OF THE YEAR
Itumeleng Khune
SA SPORTS TEAM OF THE YEAR
Team SA
SPORTSMAN OF THE YEAR

Khotso Mokoena
SPORTSWOMAN OF THE YEAR
Natalie du Toit
COACH OF THE YEAR
Gavin Hunt
DISABLED SPORTSMAN OF THE YEAR
Hilton Langenhoven
DISABLED SPORTSWOMAN OF THE YEAR
Natalie du Toit
PERSONALITY OF THE YEAR
Khotso Mokoena
DISABLED SPORTS TEAM OF THE YEAR
Team SA
VOLUNTEER OF THE YEAR
Anos Mafokate
STEVE TSHWETE LIFETIME ACHIEVEMENT AWARD
Steve Kalamazoo Mokone

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (SAIDS)

The SAIDS is the South African national anti-doping organisation. It is a public entity established by the SAIDS Act, 1997 and funded by the SRSA, with a mandate to promote participation in sport free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

By May 2008, it had 53 part-time, trained to international standards, accredited doping-control officers based throughout South Africa, who conducted in-and-out of competition doping controls on athletes from over 50 sports disciplines, with 53 trained and accredited chaperones to assist the doping-control officers.

SAIDS is one of the few national anti-doping agencies worldwide with ISO 9001:2000 certification in compliance with the International Testing Standards. This is the internationally recoginsed benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best practice in doping control in sport.

Sport Tourism Project

The Sport Tourism Project was launched at the Durban Tourism Indaba in May 2006. The primary motivation of the project is to exploit the substantial benefits that the tourism industry presents for job creation in South Africa.

It combines the Veza route-finder tool, developed by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, with sports information, enabling users to plan attendance of sports events, including mapping the route to the venue, booking accommodation and selecting restaurants and other tourist attractions in the vicinity of the venue or elsewhere in South Africa.

Tourism is widely recognised as a major growth sector internationally, and it is estimated that 30% of all tourism comprises sports tourism.

The SRSA aims to enhance the sustainability of the project by promoting "home-grown" events such as the Dusi Canoe Marathon and Argus Cycle Tour, which attract large numbers of international participants and spectators.

- It is estimated that the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ will contribute R51,1 billion to South Africa's gross domestic product between 2006 and 2010.
- By 2008, the build-up to the 2010 World Cup had already created 80 000 job opportunities in the local hospitality sector. It is estimated that over the next three years a further 116 000 jobs will be created.
- By January 2009, 40 000 jobs had been created in the construction industry.
- The projected direct, indirect and induced impacts of the total budgeted spend for the six new stadiums is R18,9 billion or 1,8 times the actual spend. Of this, around R2 billion will directly benefit low-income households and a further R7,7 million other households.
- The Organising Committee (OC) has agreed to procure 30% of the products and services it needs from small businesses and Black Economic Empowerment companies. Government and the OC have embarked on roadshows across the country to inform small business about the opportunities available from the World Cup.

SPORTS AND RECREATION

2010 World Cup

South Africa will host the first ever African World Cup in 2010. Preparations for this tournament are on track. Government is using the hosting of the World Cup to fast-track the growth and development of the country. Games will be hosted in 10 cities across the country. Other preparations taking place include:

- The International Broadcast Centre (IBC) will ensure television coverage across the globe and will cater for more than 2 000 journalists. The South African Cabinet has approved Johannesburg as the venue for the IBC.
- The official mascot for the 2010 World Cup was unveiled in Johannesburg in September 2008. The mascot, a leopard, is called Zakumi and has been designed and produced exclusively in South Africa. The name is a composition of "ZA", standing for South Africa, and "kumi" translating into "10" in various languages across Africa.

- An additional R1,4 billion has been set aside to cover cost overruns on World Cup stadium projects, and R600 million to cover the cost of last mile Internet (high-speed) connectivity between the stadiums and the national backbone network.
- The Government indicated that it would provide support for the migration to digital television to meet international broadcasting requirements for the 2010 World Cup and beyond.
- Additional allocations to local government of R8,8 billion were made to support expanded community access to housing,

In January 2008, South Africans Alex Harris and Sibusiso Vilane made history when they became the first South African team to walk unassisted to the South Pole.

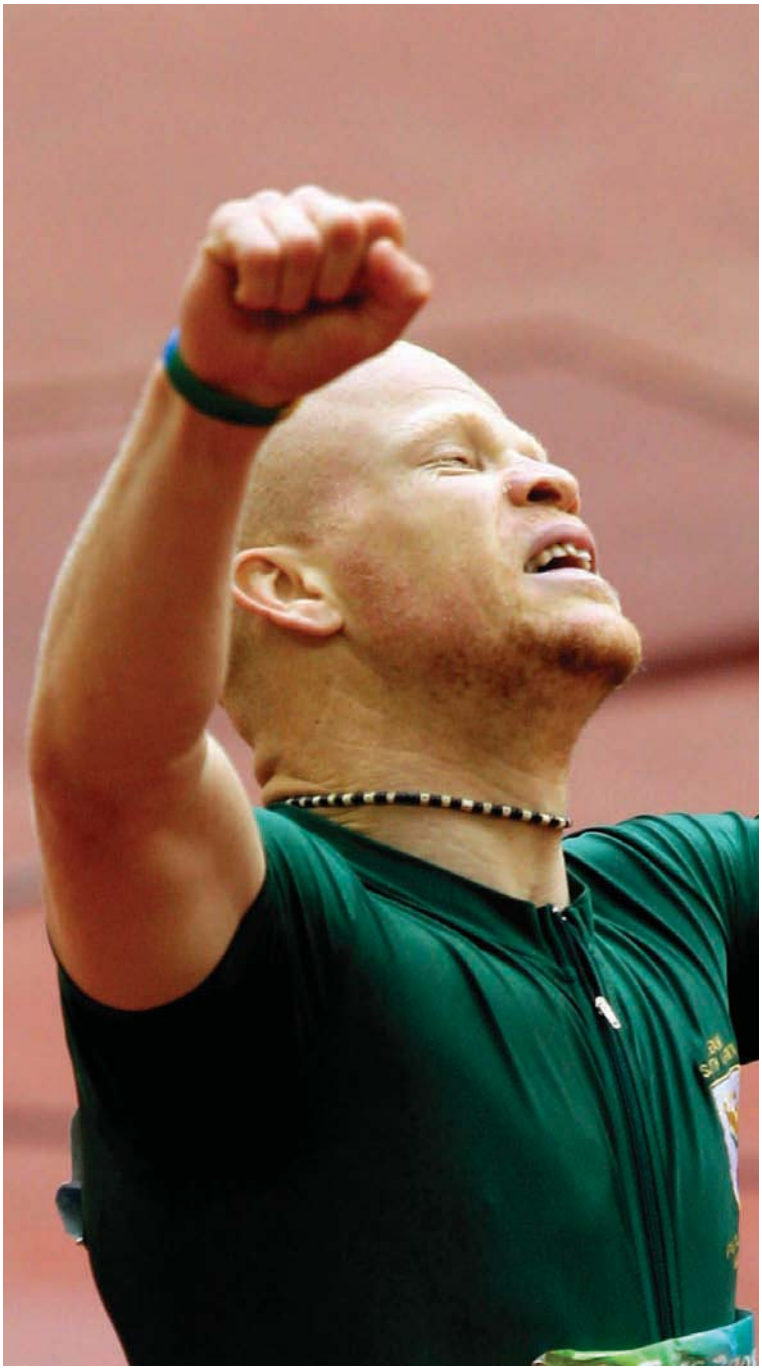
The duo set out on their 65-day journey on 10 November 2007, dragging 130-kilogram sleds almost 1 200 kilometres across some of the most hostile terrain on the planet.

potable water, sanitation, electricity and public transport of the total additional amount of R8,8 billion.

- R2,9 billion is allocated to the local government equitable share for increased costs of basic services, particularly electricity.
- R4,3 billion is earmarked for the Municipal Infrastructure Grant.
- R835 million is proposed for the Public Transport Infrastructure and Systems Grant to finance an integrated public transport network in large municipalities, including World Cup cities.
- R497 million is allocated for the completion of stadiums and to help host cities with operational requirements for hosting the 2009 Confederations Cup and 2010 FIFA World Cup.

In January 2008, South Africa's wheelchair racer Ernst van Dyk was chosen as a paralympic ambassador by the International Paralympic Committee (IPC). This was announced by the IPC at the launch of its Paralympian Ambassador Programme.

The aim of the programme is to create a roster of top past and present paralympic athletes to act as ambassadors of the paralympic movement, to be role models for young people with and without disability and to act as awareness and communication tools for the movement to enhance and increase its public profile. Eleven paralympic athletes from all over the world were chosen: Verena Bentele (Germany, Nordic skiing); Hou Bin (China, athletics); Cheri Blauwet (United States [USA], athletics); Kirsten Bruhn (Germany, swimming); Muffy Davis (Alpine, skiing); Michael Teuber (Germany, cycling); Tanni Grey-Thompson (United Kingdom, athletics); Ernst Van Dyk (South Africa, athletics); Esther Vergeer (Netherlands, wheelchair tennis); Chris Waddell (USA, Alpine skiing); and Henry Wanyoike (Egypt, athletics).



READING LIST

READING LIST

South Africa today

Buhlungu, S *et al*. eds. *State of the Nation: South Africa 2007*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Burger, D. ed. *South Africa Yearbook 2007/08*. Pretoria: Government Communication and Information System. Issued annually.

World Economic Forum. South African at 10: Perspectives by Political, Business and Civil Leaders. Cape Town: Human and Rousseau, 2004.

Overview

Sidiropoulas, E ed. *South African Yearbook of International Affairs*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2007.

Land and its people

Afolayan, F. *Culture and Customs of South Africa*. Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood, 2004.

Bowes, B and Pennington, S. *South Africa: More Good News*. Johannesburg: Good News, 2003.

Brown, D.To. *Speak of this Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Chipkin, I. *Do South Africans Exist: Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of the People*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Delius, P ed. *Mpumalanga: History and Heritage*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Distiller, N and Steyn, M. *Under Construction: Race and Identity in South Africa Today*. Sandton, Heinemann, 2004.

Jenkins, E. *Falling into Place: The Story of Modern South African Place Names*. Cape Town: David Philips, 2007.

Mitchley, C. ed. *South African Heritage: A Guide to Our Land, Our People, History and Culture*. Caledon: Mill Street Publications, 2005.

Oduyoye, M and Kanyoro, M. *The Will to Arise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2006.

Raper, P. *New Dictionary of South African Place Names*. 3rd rev ed. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, n.d.

Tyson, PD and Preston-Whyte, RA. *Weather and Climate of Southern Africa*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press of Southern Africa, 2004.

Webb, V and du Plessis, T. eds. *The Politics of Language in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

Weinberg, P. *Moving Spirit: Spirituality in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

Arts and culture

Ansell, G. *Soweto Blues: Jazz, Popular Music and Culture in South Africa*. London: Continuum, 2005.

Botha, M. *Marginal Lives and Painful Pasts: South African Cinema after Apartheid*. Cape Town: Genugtig Publishers, 2007.

Chapman, M ed. *Omnibus of a Century of South Africa Short Stories*. Johannesburg: Ad Donker, 2007.

Coplan, DB. *On Township Tonight: Three Centuries of South African Black City Music and Theatre*; 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.

De Vries, F. *Decomposing Apartheid: Popular Music Culture in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Gaylard, G. *After Colonialism: African Post-Modernism and Magical Realism*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Gray, S. *Indaba: Interviews with African Writers*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2005.

Habila, H and Kadija S. *Dreams, Miracles and Jazz: New Adventures in African Writing*. Johannesburg: Picador Africa, 2008.

Levine, L. *Traditional Music of South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.

Lucia, C. *World of South African Music: A Reader*. Cambridge (UK): Scholars' Press, 2005.

Maingard, J. *South African National Cinema*. London: Routledge, 2007.

Mangcu, X. ed. *The Meaning of Mandela: A Literary and Intellectual Celebration*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Meiring, H. *My Country in Line and Colour*. Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.

Nuttall, S. *Beautiful Ugly: African Diaspora Aesthetics*. Cape Town: Kwela, 2006.

Olvage, G. ed. *Composing Apartheid: Music For and Against Apartheid*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2008.

Perryer, S. ed. *10 Years 100 Artists: Art in a Democratic South Africa*. Cape Town: Bell Roberts, 2004.

Proud, H. ed. *Revisions: Expanding the Narrative of South African Art*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2006.

Van Eeden, J and du Preez, A. eds. *South Africa's Visual Culture*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.

History

Beinart, W. *Twentieth Century South Africa*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2001.

Boraine, A. *A Life in Transition*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2008.

Bozzoli, B. *Theatre of Struggle and the End of Apartheid*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Butler, A. *Cyril Ramaphosa*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.

Davenport, TRH and Saunders, C. *South Africa: A Modern History*. 5th ed. London: Macmillan, 2000.

Gasa, N. ed. *They Remove Boulders: Women in South African History*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2007.

Gevisser, M. *Thabo Mbeki: The Dream Deferred*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Gumede, W. *Thabo Mbeki and the Battle for the Soul of the ANC*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.

Hadland, A. *Mandela: A Life*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Harvey, R. *The Fall of Apartheid: The Inside Story from Smuts to Mbeki*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2005.

Heunis, J. *The Inner Circle: Reflections on the Last Days of White Rule*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Johnson, RW. *The First Man, The Last Nation*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Joyce, P. *The Making of a Nation: South Africa's Road to Freedom*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2007

Khangela, A. *et al*. eds. *Soweto '76: Reflections on the Liberation Struggles*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, 2006.

Mendelsohn, R and Milton S. *Jews in South Africa: An Illustrated History*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.

Meredith, M. *Diamonds, Gold and War: The Making of South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Meredith, M. *The State of Africa: A History of Fifty Years of Independence*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

O'Malley, P. *Shades of Difference: Mac Maharaj and the Struggle for South Africa*. Cape Town: Penguin, 2008.

Paging Through History. South African History as Reflected through the Cape Argus Newspaper. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Saadi, S and McInerne, C. eds. *Freedom Spring Ten Years On: Celebration and Commemoration of Ten Years of Freedom in South Africa*. Glasgow: Waverley Books, 2005.
Saunders, C and Southey, N. *A Dictionary of South African History*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: David Philip, 2001.
Segal, L. ed. *Number Four: The Making of Constitution Hill*. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2006.
Shaw, G. *Believe in Miracles: South Africa from Malan to Mandela and the Mbeki Era*. Newlands: Ampersand Press, 2007.
Stolten, HE. *History Making and Present Day Politics: The Meaning of Collective Memory in South Africa*. Uppsala: Nordiske Afrika Instituut, 2007.
Terreblanche, S. *History of Inequality in South Africa, 1652 – 2002*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2002.
Thompson, L. *History of South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
Turok, K. *Life and Soul: Portraits of Women Who Move South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

Government

Bond, P. *Elite Transition: From Apartheid to Neoliberalism in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
Calland, R. *Anatomy of South Africa. Who Holds the Power?* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
Calland, R and Graham, P. eds. *Democracy in the Time of Mbeki*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa, 2005.
Chipkin, I. *Do South Africans Exist? Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of "The People"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.
Cloete, JJN and Thornhill, C. *South African Municipal Government and Administration: New Dispensation*. Johannesburg: Dotsquare, 2005.
Constitution of the Republic of South Africa; edited by Juta's Statutes Editors: Reflecting the Law as at October 2004. Lansdowne: Juta, 2004.
Daniel, J. *et al*. eds. *State of the Nation: South Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC 2004.
Feinstein, A. *After the Party: A Personal and Political Journey inside the ANC*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Lodge, T. *Politics in South Africa: From Mandela to Mbeki*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2002.

Mangcu, X. *To the Brink: The State of Democracy in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2008.
Marganui, C. ed. *On Becoming a Democracy: Transition and Transformation in South African Society*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2004.
Ndebele, NS. *Fine Lines from the Box: Further Thoughts About our Country*. Cape Town: Umuzi, 2007.
Ramphele, M. *Laying Ghosts to Rest: Dilemmas of the Transformation in South Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2008.
Saul, JS. *Development After Globalisation: Theory and Practice for the Embattled South in a New Imperial Age*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.
Seepe, S. *Speaking Truth to Power: Reflections on Post-1994 South Africa*. Pretoria: Vista University and Skotaville Publishers, 2004.
Shain, M. ed. *Opposing Voices: Liberalism and Opposition in South Africa Today*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
Slober, P and Ludman, B. eds. *Mail and Guardian A-Z of South African Politics*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2004.
Sparks, A. *Beyond the Miracle: Inside the New South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2003.
Steinberg, J. *Notes from a Fractured Country*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Tourism

Copeland, M. *Getaway Guide to South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
Erasmus, BJP. *En Route in South Africa: A Region By Region Guide*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), c. 2007.
Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation. London: Greenwood Guides, 2005.
Kellett, F and Williams, L. eds. *Footprint South Africa*. 7th ed. Bath, England: Footprint Books, 2004.
Kramer, P. ed. *Illustrated Guide to Places to Visit in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Readers' Digest, 2001.
Road Atlas of South Africa. Johannesburg: Automobile Association, 2004.
Ross, G. *South Africa's Top Sites: Arts and Culture*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2007.

Travel Guide to South African Craft Sites. Erasmuskloof: Eskom Due-South Craft Route Project, 2004.

Viljoen, J and Tlabela, K. *Rural Tourism Development in South Africa: Trends and Challenges*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Economy

Bertelsmann-Scott, T and Draper, P. *Regional Integration and Economic Partnership Agreements: Southern Africa at the Crossroads*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.

Bhorat, H and Kenbur, R eds. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007

Brown, S, ed. *Money and Morality. South Africa's Economics Systems*. Cape Town: IJR, 2006.

Chipp, K and Ismail, Z. *E-Commerce: A Southern African Perspective*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2004.

Fox, L and Lieberthal, R eds. *Attacking Africa's Poverty: Experience from the Ground*. Washington: World Bank, 2007.

Levin, A. *The Art of African Shopping*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.

Mangcu, X, Marcus, G and Shubane, K eds. *Visions of Black Economic Empowerment*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.

Marais, H. *South Africa: Limits to Change: The Political Economy of Transition*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: University of Cape Town, 2001.

Opperman, I. ed. *Buy Right: Consumer Guide for South Africa*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2006.

Padayachee, V. ed. *The Development Decade: Economic and Social Change in South Africa, 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Zegeye, A and Maxted, J. *Our Dream Deferred: The Poor in South Africa*. Pretoria: SAHO and Unisa. 2003.

Finance

Collins, G. *Managing Your Money: Starting on the Right Track*. Durban: Butterworths, 2002.

Fourie, IJ *et al*. eds. *Student Guide to the South African Financial System*; 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Kohn, M. *Financial Institutions and Markets*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Musava, C. ed. *Behind Closed Doors: Secrecy in International Financial Institutions*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa, 2006.
Parsons, R. ed. *Manuel, Markets and Money: Essays in Appraisal*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
Porteous, D and Hazelhurst, E. *Banking on Change: Democratizing Finance in South Africa 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
Van Zyl, C. ed. *Understanding South African Financial Markets*, Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

Foreign affairs

Adebajo, A, Adedeji, A and Landsberg, C. eds. *South Africa in Africa: The Post-Apartheid Era*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.
Adebajo, A and Scanlon, H. eds. *A Dialogue of the Deaf: Essays on Africa and the United Nations*. Johannesburg: Fanele (Jacana Media) 2006.
Bond, P. *Talk Left, Walk Right: South Africa's Frustrated Global Reforms*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.
Landsberg, C. *The Quiet Diplomacy of Liberation: International Politics and South Africa's Transition*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2004.
Murray, R. *Human Rights in Africa: From the OAU to the African Union*. Cambridge: University of Cambridge Press, 2004.

Transport

Illsley, J. *In Southern Skies: A Pictorial History of Early Aviation in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2003.
Potgieter, C, Pillay, R and Rama, S. *Women, Development and Transport in Rural Eastern Cape, South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
Ross, G. *The Romance of Cape Mountain Passes*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2007.
Schnettler, FA. *Century of Cars*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 1997.
Stirling, WGM and House, JA. *They Served Africa with Wings: 60 Years of Aviation in Central Africa*. Saanichton BC Canada: Bookmark Publishing, 2004.

Agriculture, forestry and land

Derman, B, Odgaard R and Sjaastad, E. eds. *Conflicts over Land and Water in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007. South Africa, Chapters 6 and 7 (pp116-158)

Devereux, S and Maxwell, S. eds. *Food Security in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.

Du Toit, P. *The Great South African Land Scandal*. Centurion: Legacy Publications, 2004.

Lawes, MJ. *et al*. eds. *Indigenous Forests and Woodlands in South Africa*. University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Lee, M and Colvard, K. eds. *Unfinished Business: The Land Crisis in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Aisa, 2004.

Moyo, S and Yeros, P. eds. *Reclaiming the Land: The Resurgence of Rural Movements in Africa, Asia and Latin America*. London: Zed Books; Cape Town: David Philip, 2005.

Nieuwoudt, L and Groenewald, J. *The Challenge of Change: Agriculture, Land and the South African Economy*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.

Ntsebeza, L and Hall, R. eds. *The Land Question in South Africa: The Challenge of Transformation and Redistribution*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Smith, B. *The Farming Handbook*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, c.2006.

Environmental management

Bond, P. *Unsustainable South Africa: Environment, Development and Social Protest*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2002.

Cock, J. *The War Against Ourselves: Environmental Justice in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Dovers, S. ed. *South Africa's Environmental History: Cases and Comparisons*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2002.

Joubert, L. *Scorched: South Africa's Changing Environment*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Joubert, S. *Kruger National Park: A History*. Johannesburg: High Branching Publications, 2007.

Kok, P and Pietersen, J. *Environmental Management*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2000.

McDonald, D. ed. *Environmental Justice in South Africa*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2002.

Science and technology

Bonner, P and Esterhuysen, A. *A Search for Origins: The "Cradle of*

Humankind" and the South Africanisation of Science. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Harrison, P. *South Africa's Top Sites: Science*. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2004.

Harrison, I and Joyce, P. eds. *The Book of Firsts: South African Edition*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

McCarthy, T and Rubidge, B. *The Story of Earth and Life: A Southern African Perspective on a 4,6-Billion-Year Journey*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.

Pillay, U, Roberts, B and Rule, S. eds. *South African Social Attitudes*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Communications

Evans, N and Seeber, M. eds. *The Politics of Publishing in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2000.

Hadland, A, Aldridge, M and Ogada, J. *Re-visioning Television: Policy, Strategy and Models for the Sustainable Development of Community Television in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Nel, F. *Writing for the Media in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.

Oosthuizen, L. *Media Ethics in the South African Context*. Cape Town: Juta, 2002.

Steyn-Barlow, C. *Publish and Be Damned: Two Decades of Scandals*. Alberton: Galago, 2006.

Switzer, L and Adhikari, M. eds. *South Africa's Resistance: Press: Alternative Voices in the Last Generation Under Apartheid*. Ohio: Ohio University Centre for International Studies, 2000.

Thlabela, K. *et al*. eds. *Mapping ICT Access in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Trovato, B. *On the Run*. Sea Point: Black Hat, 2007.

Young, L. *The All Africa Internet Guide*. Johannesburg: M & G Books, 2002.

Housing

Bond, P. *Cities of Gold: Townships of Coal: Essays on South Africa's New Urban Crisis*. Trematon, NJ: African World Press, 2000.

Boraine, A. ed. *State of the Cities Report 2004*, Johannesburg: South African Cities Network, 2004.

Harrison, P. *et al*. eds. *Confronting Management: Housing and Urban*

Development in a Democratising Society. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.

Huchzermeyer, M and Karem, A. eds. *Informal Settlements: A Perpetual Challenge?* Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2006.

Safety, security and defence

Altbeker, A. *The Dirty Work of Democracy*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.

Altbeker, A. *A Country at War with Itself: South Africa's Crisis of Crime*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2007.

Bezuidenhout, C and Joubert, S. eds. *Child and Youth Misbehaviour in South Africa: A Holistic View*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.

Burger, J. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Punishment in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.

Dixon, B and van der Spuy E. *Justice Gained? Crime and Crime Control in South Africa's Transition*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.

Gamba, V. ed. *Governing Arms: The Southern African Experience*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2000.

Gumedze, S. ed. *Private Security in Africa: Manifestation, Challenges and Regulation*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2007.

Hendricks, C. ed. *Polling Station: From State Security to Human Security in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Institute for Security Studies, 2006.

Irish-Qobosheane, J. *Gentlemen or Villains, Thugs or Heroes: The Social Economy of Organised Crime in South Africa*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2007.

Marks, M. *Transforming the Robocops: Changing Policy in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Marks, M. *Young Warriors: Youth Politics, Identity and Violence in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2004.

Pelser, E. ed. *Crime Prevention Partnerships: Lessons from Practice*. Pretoria: Institute of Strategic Studies, 2003.

Solomon, H. ed. *Towards a Common Defence and Security Policy in the Southern African Development Community*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa 2004.

Steinberg, J. *The Number One Man's Search for Identity in the Cape Underworld and Prison Gangs*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2004.

Straw, M. *Crime and Policing in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2002.

READING LIST

Justice and correctional services

Asmal, K *et al. Legacy of Freedom: The ANC's Human Rights Tradition: Africans' Claim in South Africa, the Freedom Charter, the Women's Charter and the Human Rights Landmarks of the African National Congress*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Bennett, TW. *Customary Law in South Africa*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.

Bizos, G. *Odyssey to Freedom*. Johannesburg: Random House, 2007.

Doxator, E and Villa-Vicence, C. eds. *Repairing the Unforgivable: Reparations, Restoration and Renewal*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.

Du Toit, D *et al. Labour Relations Law: A Comprehensive Guide*. 5th ed. Durban: Lexis Nexis Butterworths, 2006.

Edelstein, J. *Truth and Lies: Stories from the Truth and Reconciliation Commission in South Africa*. Johannesburg: M & G Books, 2001.

Glauber, I. *The Death Penalty as a Deterrent*. Johannesburg: The Author, 2004.

Jordaan, P. *Credit Law of South Africa: A Guide to Consumers, Credit Users and Credit Granters*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.

McQuoid-Mason, D. ed. *Street Law South Africa: Practical Law for South Africans*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.

Turrell, R. *White Mercy: A Study of the Death Penalty in South Africa*. Westport, Cape Town: Praeger, 2004.

Vale, P. *Security and Politics in South Africa: The Regional Dimension*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.

Van der Walt, J. *Law and Sacrifice: Towards a Post-Apartheid Theory of Law*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Minerals and mining

Fig, D. *Uranium Record: Questioning South Africa's Nuclear Direction*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.

Simons, PB. *Cullinan Diamonds: Dreams and Discoveries*. Vlaeberg, Cape: Fernwood Press, 2004.

Strategic Overview of the South African Mining Industry: Gold, Coal, Platinum-Group Metals, Diamonds, Vanadium. Johannesburg: Industrial Development Corporation, 2000.

Education

Engelbrecht, P and Green, L. eds. *Responding to the Challenges of Inclusive Education in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.

Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2004.

Fleisch, B. *Managing Educational Change: The State and School Reform in South Africa*. Sandown: Heinemann, 2005.

Morrow, W. *Learning to Teach in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Naidu, A. *et al*. *Education Management and Leadership: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press South Africa, 2008.

Wolhuter, CC. *et al*. eds. *Comparative Education: Education Systems and Contemporary Issues*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.

Health

Abdool Karim, SS and Abdool Karim, Q. eds. *HIV/AIDS in South Africa*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Barnett, T and Whiteside, A. *AIDS in the 21st Century: Disease and Globalisation*. 2nd ed. Basingstroke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2006.

De Haan, M. *et al*. *The Health of Southern Africa*. 9th ed. Cape Town: Juta, 2005.

Dennil, K, King, L and Swanepoel, T. *Aspects of Primary Healthcare*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press of Southern Africa, 2004.

Evian, C. *Primary Health Care*. 4th rev. ed. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.

Evian, C. *Primary HIV/AIDS Care*. 4th rev. ed. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.

Kauffman, KD and Lindauer, DL. eds. *AIDS and South Africa: The Social Expression of a Pandemic*; Basingstoke, Hampshire: Palgrave Macmillan, 2004.

Hassim, A, Heywood, M and Bergen, J. *Health and Democracy: A Guide to Human Rights, Health Law and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Tokai, Cape: Siberlink , 2007.

Nattrass, N. *Mortal Combat: AIDS Denialism and the Struggle for Antiretrovirals in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Steinberg, J. *Three-Letter Plague: A Young Man's Journey through a Great Epidemic*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.

Van Rensburg, HCJ. *Health and Health Care in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.

Social development

Amoateng, AY and Heaton, TB. eds. *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Brown, D. *To Speak of This Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Chidester, D, Dexter, P and Wilmot, J. *What Holds Us Together: Social Cohesion in South Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2003.

Dawes, A. *et al*, eds. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South African Rights Based Approach*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2007.

Geisler, G. *Women and the Remaking of Politics in Southern Africa: Negotiating Autonomy, Incorporation and Representation*. Uppsala: Nordiska Afrikainstituut, 2004.

MacDonald, M. *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2008.

Patel, L. *Social Welfare and Social Development in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2005.

Pillay, U, Roberts, B and Rule, S eds. *South African Social Attitudes: Changing Times, Diverse Voices*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Sewpaul, V and Hischer, D. *Social Work in Times of Neotribalism: A Post-Modern Discourse*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.

Terry, G. *Women's Rights*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2007.

Zegeye, A and Kriger, R. eds. *Culture in the New South Africa: After Apartheid: Volume 2*; Cape Town: Kwela Books and South African History Online, 2001.

Zegeye, A. ed. *Social Identities in the New South Africa: After Apartheid: Volume 1*. Cape Town: Kwela Books and South African History Online, 2001.

Sport

Alegi, P. *Laduma! Soccer, Politics and Society in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Black, B. *Fly-Fishing South Africa's Rivers, Lakes and Surf*. Cape Town: Struik, 2007.

Colquhoun, A. ed. *Sasol South African Rugby Annual 2006*. Cape Town: SA Rugby and MWP Media, 2005.

Cottrell, T. ed. *Nedbank Runners' Guide to Road Races in South Africa*; Parklands: Guide Book Publications, 2005.

Jaffee, J and Wolfaardt, F. *And Away They Go*. Johannesburg: Sharp Sharp Media, 2004.

Marais, J. *Great African Adventures: A Guide to the Mother Country's Ultimate Outdoor Adventures*. Cape Town: Struik, 2008.

Mazwai, T. ed. *Thirty Years of South African Soccer*. Cape Town and Randburg: Sunbird Publishing and Mafube Publishing, 2003.

Meintjies, M. *Remarkable Flyfishing Destinations of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.

Morgan, P. *International Rugby Board Rugby Yearbook*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2008.

Murray, B and Christopher M. *Caught Behind: Race and Politics in Springbok Cricket*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press and Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Osborne, P. Basil d'Oliviera: *Cricket and Conspiracy: The Untold Story*. London: Little Brown, 2004.

Raath, P. *Soccer Through the Years 1862 – 2002: The First Official History of South African Soccer*. Cape Town: The Author, 2002.

Ramsamy, S. *Reflections on a Life in Sport*. Cape Town: Publishing Partnership for Greenhouse, 2004.

Wolhunter, L. ed. *Nedbank Guide to Flyfishing in Southern Africa*. 5th ed. Np: Federation of Southern African Flyfishers, 2004.

Important telephone numbers and notes